MINI  Owner's Manual for the vehicle

Thank you for choosing a MINI.

The more familiar you are with your vehicle, the better control you will have on the road. We therefore strongly suggest:

Read this Owner's Manual before starting off in your new MINI. Also use the Integrated Owner's Manual in your vehicle. It contains important information on vehicle operation that will help you make full use of the technical features available in your MINI. The manual also contains information designed to enhance operating reliability and road safety, and to contribute to maintaining the value of your MINI.

Any updates made after the editorial deadline can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

Get started now. We wish you driving fun and inspiration with your MINI.
The fastest way to find information on a particular topic or item is by using the index, refer to page 260.


6 Information

AT A GLANCE
16 Cockpit
20 Central Information Display (CID)
28 Voice activation system
31 Owner's Manual media

CONTROLS
38 Opening and closing
59 Settings
68 Transporting children safely
72 Driving
93 Displays
111 Lights
117 Safety
137 Driving stability control systems
142 Driving comfort
160 Climate control
168 Interior equipment
175 Storage compartments
178 Cargo area

DRIVING TIPS
184 Things to remember when driving
189 Saving fuel

MOBILITY
198 Refueling
200 Fuel
202 Wheels and tires
221 Engine compartment
223 Engine oil
227 Coolant
229 Maintenance
231 Replacing components
242 Breakdown assistance
248 Care

REFERENCE
256 Technical data
259 Appendix
260 Everything from A to Z
USING THIS OWNER'S MANUAL

Orientation
The fastest way to find information on a particular topic is by using the index.
An initial overview of the vehicle is provided in the first chapter.

Updates made after the editorial deadline
Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the following Owner's Manuals:
▷ Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.
▷ Online Owner's Manual.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

The Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be obtained as printed book from the service center.
The topics of Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be called up via the following Owner's Manuals:
▷ Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.
▷ Online Owner's Manual.

ADDITIONAL SOURCES OF INFORMATION

Dealer's service center
A dealer's service center will be glad to answer questions at any time.

Internet
The Owner's Manual and general Information about MINI, for example on technology, are available on the Internet: www.miniusa.com.

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle
The Integrated Owner's Manual specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle. The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the Control Display. Additional information, refer to page 31.

MINI Motorer's Guide app
The app specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle. The app can be displayed on smartphones and tablets. Additional information, refer to page 33.

Online Owner's Manual
The Online Owner's Manual specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle. The Online Owner's Manual can be displayed in any of today's browsers. Additional information, refer to page 33.
Symbols and Displays

Symbols in the Owner’s Manual

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>☢️</td>
<td>Precautions that must be followed. To avoid the possibility of personal injury and serious damage to the vehicle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>➣</td>
<td>End of a specific item of information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🍒</td>
<td>Measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;...&quot;</td>
<td>Control Display texts used to select individual functions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>›...‹</td>
<td>Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>››...‹‹</td>
<td>Answers generated by the voice activation system.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Action steps

Action steps to be carried out are presented as numbered list. The steps must be carried out in the defined order.

1. First action step.
2. Second action step.

Enumerations

Enumerations without mandatory order or alternative possibilities are presented as list with bullet points.

▷ First possibility.
▷ Second possibility.

Symbols on vehicle components

اتهم Refers to the relevant section of this Owner’s Manual for further information on a particular part or assembly.

Vehicle Features and Options

This Owner’s Manual describes all models and all standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series. Therefore, this Owner’s Manual also describes and illustrates features and functions that are not available in your vehicle, for example because of the selected optional features or the country-specific version.

This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

For any options and equipment not described in this Owner’s Manual, refer to the Supplementary Owner’s Manuals.

Your dealer’s service center is happy to answer any questions that you may have about the features and options applicable to your vehicle.

Status of the Owner’s Manual

Basic information

The manufacturer of your vehicle pursues a policy of constant development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards. In rare cases, therefore, the features described in this Owner’s Manual may differ from those in your vehicle.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner’s Manual and the following Owner’s Manuals:

▷ Integrated Owner’s Manual in the vehicle.
FOR YOUR OWN SAFETY

Manufacturer
The manufacturer of this MINI is Bayerische Motoren Werke Aktionengesellschaft, BMW AG.

Intended use
Follow the following when using the vehicle:
▷ Information on the vehicle. Do not remove stickers.
▷ Technical vehicle data.
▷ The traffic, speed, and safety laws where the vehicle is driven.
▷ Vehicle documents and statutory documents.

Warranty
Your vehicle is technically configured for the operating conditions and registration requirements applying in the country of first delivery, also known as homologation. If your vehicle is to be operated in a different country it might be necessary to adapt your vehicle to potentially differing operating conditions and registration requirements. If your vehicle does not comply with the homologation requirements in a certain country you may not be able to lodge warranty claims for your vehicle there. Further information on warranty is available from a dealer’s service center.

Maintenance and repairs
Advanced technology, e. g. the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires suitable maintenance and repair work.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you entrust corresponding procedures to a MINI dealer’s service center. If you choose to use another service facility, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends use of a facility that performs work, for instance maintenance and repair, according to MINI specifications with properly trained personnel, referred to in this Owner’s Manual as "another qualified service center or repair shop".

If work is performed improperly, for instance maintenance and repair, there is a risk of subsequent damage and related safety risks.

Parts and accessories
The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends the use of parts and accessory products approved by the manufacturer of the MINI.

Approved parts and accessories, and advice on their use and installation are available from a MINI dealer’s service center.

MINI parts and accessories were tested by the manufacturer of the MINI for their safety and suitability in MINI vehicles.

The manufacturer of your vehicle warrants genuine MINI parts and accessories.

The manufacturer of your vehicle does not evaluate whether each individual product from another manufacturer can be used with MINI vehicles without presenting a safety hazard, even if a country-specific official approval was issued. The manufacturer of your vehicle does not evaluate whether these products are suitable for MINI vehicles under all usage conditions.

California Proposition 65 Warning
California laws require us to state the following warning:

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, cer-
tain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.

**Service and warranty**

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly. Your vehicle is covered by the following warranties:

- New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- Rust Perforation Limited Warranty.
- Federal Emissions Performance Warranty.
- California Emission Control System Limited Warranty.

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate your vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt your vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

**Maintenance**

Maintain the vehicle regularly to sustain the road safety, operational reliability and the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Specifications for required maintenance measures:

- MINI Maintenance system.
- Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models.
- Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

If the vehicle is not maintained according to these specifications, this could result in serious damage to the vehicle. Such damage is not covered by the MINI New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

**DATA MEMORY**

**General information**

Electronic control devices are installed in the vehicle. Some of these are necessary for the vehicle to function safely or provide assistance during driving, for instance driver assistance systems. Furthermore, control devices facilitate comfort or infotainment functions.

Electronic control devices contain data memories, which are able to temporarily or permanently store information about the condition of the vehicle, component load, maintenance requirements, technical events or faults. This information generally records the state of a component, a module, a system or the environment, for instance:

- Operating states of system components, e.g., fill levels, tire inflation pressure, battery status.
- Status messages for the vehicle and its individual components, e.g., wheel rotational speed, wheel speed, deceleration, transverse acceleration, engaged safety belt indicator.
Malfunctions and faults in important system components, for instance lights and brakes.

Information on vehicle-damaging events.

Responses by the vehicle to special situations such as airbag deployment or engagement of the stability control systems.

Ambient conditions, e.g., temperature, rain sensor signals.

The data is required to perform the control device functions. Furthermore, it also serves to recognize and correct malfunctions, and helps the vehicle manufacturer to optimize vehicle functions. The majority of this data is transient and is only processed within the vehicle itself. Only a small proportion of the data is stored in event or fault memories and, if needed, in the vehicle key.

Reading out data

When servicing, for instance during repairs, service processes, warranty cases, and quality assurance measures, this technical information can be read out from the vehicle together with the vehicle identification number. A dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop can read out the information. The socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis required by law in the vehicle is used to read out the data. The data is collected, processed, and used by the relevant organizations in the service network. The data documents the technical conditions of the vehicle, helps in locating faults and improving quality, and is transferred to the vehicle manufacturer, if needed.

Furthermore, the manufacturer has product monitoring duties to meet in line with product liability law. To fulfill these duties, the vehicle manufacturer needs technical data from the vehicle. Fault and event memories in the vehicle can be reset when a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop performs repair or servicing work.

Data on the scope of servicing work performed and maintenance records are stored in the vehicle by means of the service history and transferred to the vehicle manufacturer. The vehicle owner can contact a dealer’s service center to object to the data being stored and transferred to the vehicle manufacturer. This objection applies for as long as the vehicle owner remains the proprietor of the vehicle.

Data entry and data transfer into the vehicle

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, some data can be transferred into the vehicle when using comfort and infotainment functions, for instance:

- Multimedia data such as music, films or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system.
- Address book data for use in conjunction with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system.
- Entered navigation destinations.
- Data on the use of Internet services.

This data can be stored locally in the vehicle or is found on a device that has been connected to the vehicle, e.g., a smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player. If this data is stored in the vehicle, it can be deleted at any time. This data is only transmitted to third parties if expressly desired. This depends on the personal settings selected for using online services.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following comfort and individual settings can be stored in the vehicle and modified at any time, for instance:

- Settings for the seat and steering wheel positions.
- Suspension and climate control settings.
- Individual settings, for instance lighting in the car’s interior.
Control via mobile devices

Depending on the vehicle equipment, mobile devices connected to the vehicle, for instance smartphones, can be controlled via the vehicle control elements. The sound and picture from the mobile device can be played back and displayed through the multimedia system. Certain information is transferred to the mobile device at the same time. Depending on the type of connection, this includes, for instance position data and other general vehicle information. This optimizes the way in which selected apps, for instance navigation or music playback, work.

There is no further interaction between the mobile device and the vehicle, for instance active access to vehicle data. How the data will be processed further is determined by the provider of the particular app being used. The extent of the possible settings depends on the respective app and the operating system of the mobile device.

Services

General information

If the vehicle has a wireless network connection, this enables data to be exchanged between the vehicle and other systems. The wireless network connection is realized via an in-vehicle transmitter and receiver unit or via personal mobile devices brought into the vehicle, for instance smartphones. This wireless network connection enables 'online functions' to be used. These include online services and apps supplied by the vehicle manufacturer or by other providers.

Services from the vehicle manufacturer

Where online services from the vehicle manufacturer are concerned, the corresponding functions are described in the appropriate place, for instance the Owner's Manual or manufacturer's website. The relevant legal information pertaining to data protection is provided there too. Personal data may be used to perform online services. Data is exchanged over a secure connection, for instance with the IT systems of the vehicle manufacturer intended for this purpose. Any collection, processing, and use of personal data above and beyond that needed to provide the services must always be based on a legal permission, contractual arrangement or consent.

In addition, the vehicle manufacturer evaluates anonymized information on transport infrastructure and how the infotainment system is used. This information cannot be traced back to individual vehicles or people. Evaluating the data enables the manufacturer to further improve its products or services, for instance by incorporating the most up-to-date traffic bulletins. The data transfer feature can be deactivated in the vehicle. Certain services and functions, some of which are subject to a charge, can be deactivated by the driver. It is also possible to activate or deactivate the data connection as a whole. That is, with the exception of functions and services required by law such as Assist systems.

Services from other providers

When using online services from other providers, these services are the responsibility of the relevant provider and subject to their data privacy conditions and terms of use. The vehicle manufacturer has no influence on the content exchanged during this process. Information on the way in which personal data is collected and used in relation to services from third parties, the scope of such data, and its purpose, can be obtained from the relevant service provider.

EVENT DATA RECORDER EDR

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder EDR. The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in under-
standing how a vehicle’s systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were fastened.
- How far, if at all, the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

EDR data is recorded by your vehicle only if a nontrivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data, for instance name, gender, age, and crash location, are recorded.

However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

**VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER**

The vehicle identification number can be found in the engine compartment, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

The vehicle identification number can be found on the type label, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

The vehicle identification number can also be found behind the windshield.
REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS

For US customers
The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.
If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration NHTSA, in addition to notifying MINI of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.
If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.
However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or MINI of North America, LLC.
To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safecar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590.
You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safecar.gov

For Canadian customers
Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may call the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety.
WATCH ME.
VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

IN THE VICINITY OF THE STEERING WHEEL

1. Power windows, all 51
2. Power windows, individual 51
3. Exterior mirror operation 65
4. Buttons of the central locking system 43
5. Lights
   • Front fog lights 114
   • Rear fog light 114
6. Light switch 111
7. Lights off
8. Daytime running lights 113
9. Parking lights 111
10. Low beams 111
11.
12.
13.
Automatic headlight control 112
Cornering light 113
High-beam Assistant 113
Instrument lighting 115

Roadside parking lights 112
Onboard Computer 102

Camera-based cruise control on/off 142
Cruise control on/off 147
Cruise control: store speed
Pausing, continuing cruise control
Cruise control: increase speed
Cruise control: reduce speed
Camera-based cruise control: reduce distance
Camera-based cruise control: increase distance

Turn signal 77
High beams, headlight flasher 77
High-beam Assistant 113

Windshield wipers 81
Rain sensor 81
Cleaning windows 79

Voice activation 28
Telephone
Confirm the selection 102
Move selection up 102
Move selection down 102
Increase volume
Reduce volume

Horn, entire surface

Adjust the steering wheel 67
Unlock hood 221
IN THE VICINITY OF THE CENTER CONSOLE

1. Hazard warning system 242
   - Intelligent Safety 128

2. Control Display 20

3. Radio/Multimedia

4. Glove compartment 175

5. Climate control 160

6. PDC Park Distance Control 149
   - Rearview camera 152
   - Parking assistant 155
   - Auto Start/Stop function 74

7. Start/stop the engine and switch the ignition on/off 72
   - DSC Dynamic Stability Control 137
   - MINI Driving Modes switch 139

8. Steptronic transmission selector lever 85
   - Manual transmission selector lever 84

9. Controller with buttons 21

9. Parking brake 77
ALL AROUND THE INTERIOR MIRROR

1. Emergency Request
2. Indicator light, front-seat passenger airbag
3. Reading lights
4. Ambient light
5. Convertible top
6. Interior lights
VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

CONCEPT

The Central Information Display (CID) combines the functions of a multitude of switches. Thus, these functions can be operated from a central location.

SAFETY INFORMATION

WARNING

Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of an accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. If necessary, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary. ◄

OVERVIEW OF CONTROL ELEMENTS

Control elements

1 Control Display
2 Controller with buttons and, depending on the equipment version, with touchpad

Control Display

General information

To clean the Control Display, follow the care instructions, refer to page 252.

In the case of very high temperatures on the Control Display, for instance due to intense solar radiation, the brightness may be reduced down to complete deactivation. Once the temperature is reduced, for instance through shade or air conditioning, the normal functions are restored.

Safety information

NOTE

Objects in the area in the front of the Control Display can shift and damage the Control Display. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not place objects in the area in front of the Control Display. ◄
Switching on
1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press the Controller.

Switching off
1. Press button.
2. "Turn off control display"

Controller with navigation system
The buttons can be used to open the menus directly. The Controller can be used to select menu items and enter the settings.

Some functions of the Central Information Display (CID) can be operated using the touchpad on the Controller, refer to page 23:

▷ Turn.

▷ Press.

Buttons on the Controller

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Button</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MENU</td>
<td>Opens the main menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RADIO</td>
<td>Opens the Radio menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEDIA</td>
<td>Opens the Multimedia menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAV</td>
<td>Opens the Navigation menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TEL</td>
<td>Opens the Phone menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BACK</td>
<td>Displays the previous display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPTION</td>
<td>Open the Options menu.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Controller without navigation system
The buttons can be used to open the menus directly. The Controller can be used to select menu items and enter the settings.

▷ Turn.
OPERATING CONCEPT

Opening the main menu

Press button.

The main menu is displayed.
All Central Information Display (CID) functions can be called up via the main menu.

Selecting menu items

Highlighted menu items can be selected.

1. Turn the Controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.
2. Press the Controller.

Menu items in the Owner's Manual

In the Owner's Manual, menu items that can be selected are set in quotation marks, for instance "Settings".

Changing between displays

After a menu item is selected, for instance "Radio", a new display appears. Displays can overlap.

Buttons on the Controller

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Button</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MENU</td>
<td>Opens the main menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUDIO</td>
<td>Open audio menu last listened to, switch between audio menus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TEL</td>
<td>Opens the Phone menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BACK</td>
<td>Open the previous display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPTION</td>
<td>Open the Options menu.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Move the Controller to the left.
Closes the current display and shows the previous display.
Reopens previous display by pressing BACK button. In this case, the current display is not closed.

Move the Controller to the right.
Opens a new display on top of the previous screen.

Arrows pointing to the left or right indicate that additional displays can be opened.

Opening the Options menu
Press button.
The "Options" menu is displayed.

Additional options: move the Controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu is displayed.

Options menu
The "Options" menu consists of various areas:
- Screen settings, for instance "Split screen".

Control options for the selected main menu, for instance for "Radio".
If applicable, further operating options for the selected menu, for instance "Store station".

Changing settings
1. Select a field.
2. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is displayed.
3. Press the Controller.

Activating/deactivating the functions
Several menu items are preceded by a checkbox. The checkbox indicates whether the function is activated or deactivated. Selecting the menu item activates or deactivates the function.

Function is activated.
Function is deactivated.

TOUCHPAD
Some functions of the Central Information Display (CID) can be operated using the touchpad on the Controller:

Selecting functions
1. "Settings"
2. "Touchpad"
3. Select the desired function.
   "Speller": enter letters and numbers.
"Interactive map": use the interactive map.
"Audio feedback": pronounces entered letters and numbers.

**Entering letters and numbers**
Entering letters requires some practice at the beginning. When entering, pay attention to the following:

- The system distinguishes between upper and lower-case letters and numbers. To make entries, it may be necessary to change between upper and lower-case letters, numbers and characters, refer to page 27.
- Enter characters as they are displayed on the Control Display.
- Always enter associated characters, such as accents or periods so that the letter can be clearly recognized. The set language determines what input is possible. Where necessary, enter special characters via the Controller.
- To delete a character, swipe to the left on the touchpad.
- To enter a blank space, swipe to the right in the center of the touchpad.
- To enter a hyphen, swipe to the right in the upper area of the touchpad.
- To enter an underscore, swipe to the right in the lower area of the touchpad.

**Operating the interactive map**
The interactive map in the navigation system can be moved via the touchpad.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Operation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interactive map.</td>
<td>Swipe into respective direction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enlarge/shrink interactive map.</td>
<td>Drag in or out on the touchpad with fingers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display menu.</td>
<td>Tap once.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Changing settings**
You can use the touchpad to change Control Display settings, for instance volume. Swipe left or right to do this.

**EXAMPLE: SETTING THE CLOCK**

**Setting the clock**

1. Press button. The main menu is displayed.
2. Turn the Controller until "Settings" is highlighted, and then press the Controller.
3. If necessary, move the Controller to the left to display "Time/Date".
4. Turn the Controller until "Time/Date" is highlighted, and then press the Controller.
5. Turn the Controller until "Time:" is highlighted, and then press the Controller.
6. Turn the Controller to set the hours, and then press the Controller.
7. Turn the Controller to set the minutes, and then press the Controller.

**STATUS INFORMATION**

**Status field**
The following information is displayed in the status field at the top right:

- Time.
- Current entertainment source.
- Sound output, on/off.
- Signal strength of cellular network.
- Phone status.
- Traffic bulletin reception.

**Status field symbols**
The symbols are grouped as follows:

### Radio symbols

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>🎧</td>
<td>HD Radio station is being received.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📡</td>
<td>Satellite radio is switched on.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Telephone symbols

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>📞</td>
<td>Incoming or outgoing call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📞</td>
<td>Missed call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📡</td>
<td>Signal strength of cellular network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📡</td>
<td>Symbol flashes: network search.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📡</td>
<td>Cellular network is not available.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📡</td>
<td>Bluetooth is switched on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🔶</td>
<td>Roaming is active.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📩</td>
<td>SMS text message received.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Entertainment symbols

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>🎵</td>
<td>Music collection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🎵</td>
<td>Gracenote® database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🃝</td>
<td>AUX-IN port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🃝</td>
<td>USB audio interface.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Additional symbols

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>🎧</td>
<td>Spoken instructions are switched off.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SPLIT SCREEN**

**General information**
Additional information can be displayed on the right side of the split screen, for instance information from the Onboard Computer.

In the divided screen view, the so-called split screen, this information remains visible even when switching to another menu.

**Switching the split screen on/off**
On the Control Display:

1. Press button.
2. "Split screen"
**Selecting the display**

On the Control Display:

1. Press button.
2. "Split screen"
3. Move the Controller until the split screen is selected.
4. Press the Controller or select "Split screen content".
5. Select the desired menu item.

**Running a function**

1. Press button.
   - The function will work immediately.
   - This means, for instance that the number is dialed when a phone number is selected.

**Displaying the key assignment**

Touch buttons with finger. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

The button assignment is displayed at the top edge of screen.

**Deleting the button assignments**

1. Press buttons 1 and 6 simultaneously for approx. 5 seconds.
2. "OK"

**DELETING PERSONAL DATA IN THE VEHICLE**

**Concept**

Depending on the usage, the vehicle stores personal data, such as stored radio stations. This personal data can be permanently deleted via the Central Information Display (CID).

**General information**

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following data is deleted:

- Personal Profile settings.
- Stored radio stations.
▷ Stored programmable memory buttons.
▷ Travel and Onboard Computer information.
▷ Music collection.
▷ Navigation, for instance stored destinations.
▷ Phone book.
▷ Voice notes.
Altogether, the deletion of the data can take up to 30 minutes.

Functional requirement
Data can only be deleted while stationary.

Deleting data
Heed and follow the instructions on the Control Display.

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. "Settings"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Delete all personal data"
5. "Continue"
6. "OK"

ENTERING LETTERS AND NUMBERS

General information
1. Turn the Controller: select letters or numbers.
2. Select additional letters or numbers, if needed.
3. "OK": confirm the entry.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Press the Controller: delete letters or number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Press the Controller for an extended period: delete all letters or numbers.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Switching between upper/lower case, numbers and characters
Depending on the menu, you can switch between entering upper and lower case letters and numbers:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Enter the letters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@</td>
<td>Enter the numbers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abc or ABC</td>
<td>Tip the Controller up.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Without navigation system
@ A a Select the symbol.

Entry comparison
When entering names and addresses, the choice is narrowed down with every letter entered and letters may be added automatically. Entries are continuously compared with data stored in the vehicle.

▷ Only those letters are offered during entry for which data is available.
▷ Destination search: place names can be entered in all languages that are available on the Control Display.
This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

**CONCEPT**

Most functions displayed on the Control Display can be operated by voice commands via the voice activation system. The system supports you with announcements during input.

**GENERAL INFORMATION**

- Functions that can only be used when the vehicle is stationary cannot be used via the voice activation system.
- The system uses a special microphone on the driver's side.
- ▶ in the Owner's Manual denotes verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.
- Say the commands, numbers, and letters smoothly and with normal volume, emphasis, and speed.
- Always say commands in the language of the voice activation system.

**FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS**

Via the Control Display, set a language that is also supported by the voice activation system so that the spoken commands can be identified.

To set the language, refer to page 106.

**USING THE VOICE ACTIVATION SYSTEM**

**Activating the voice activation system**

1. Press button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the signal.
3. Say the command.

A command that is recognized by the voice activation system is announced and displayed in the instrument cluster.

This symbol in the instrument cluster indicates that the voice activation system is active.

If no other commands are available, operate the function via the Central Information Display (CID).

**Terminating the voice activation system**

Press the button on the steering wheel or ›Cancel‹.

**POSSIBLE COMMANDS**

**General information**

Most menu items on the Control Display can be voiced as commands.
The available commands depend on the menu that is currently displayed on the Control Display.

There are short commands for many functions. You may select list entries such as phone list entries via voice activation. Read these list entries out loud exactly as they are shown in the respective list.

**Having possible commands read aloud**

You can have available commands read out loud for you: ›Voice commands‹

E.g., if the "Settings" menu is displayed, the commands for the settings are read out loud.

**Executing functions using short commands**

Execute functions on the main menu via short commands. It almost doesn't matter which menu item is selected, for instance ›Vehicle status‹.

The list for short commands of the voice activation system can be called up via the Integrated Owner's Manual on the Control Display.

**Help dialog for the voice activation system**

Calling up help dialog: ›Help‹

Additional commands for the help dialog:

››Help with examples‹‹: announces information about the current operating options and the most important commands for them.

››Help with voice activation‹‹: announces information about the principle of operation for the voice activation system.

**EXAMPLE: OPENING THE TONE SETTINGS**

**Via the main menu**

The commands of the menu items are spoken just as they are selected via the Controller.

1. Switch on the Entertainment sound output, if needed.
2. Press button on the steering wheel.
3. ›Radio‹
4. ›Tone‹

**Via short command**

The desired tone settings can also be started via a short command.

1. Switch on the Entertainment sound output, if needed.
2. Press button on the steering wheel.
3. ›Tone‹

**SETTING THE VOICE DIALOG**

You can set the system to use standard dialog or a short version.

The short version of the voice dialog plays back short messages in abbreviated form.

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Speech type:"
4. Select setting.

**ADJUSTING THE VOLUME**

Turn the volume button during the spoken instructions until the desired volume is set.

› The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.
The volume is stored for the profile currently used.

INFORMATION ON EMERGENCY REQUESTS

Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a phone connection.

ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

- Keep the doors, windows, and convertible top closed to prevent noise interference.
- Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.
OWNER'S MANUAL MEDIA

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

GENERAL INFORMATION

You can use various media formats to call up the content in the Owner's Manual. The following Owner's Manual media formats are available:

▷ MINI Motorer’s Guide App, refer to page 33.
▷ Online Owner's Manual, refer to page 33.

There are different features, refer to page 34, in each of the different media formats.

PRINTED OWNER'S MANUAL

Concept

The printed Owner's Manual describes all standard, country-specific, and optional features offered with the series.

General information

The Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be obtained as printed book from the service center.

Supplementary Owner's Manuals

Also follow the instructions of the Supplementary Owner's Manuals, which are included in addition to the onboard literature.

INTEGRATED OWNER'S MANUAL IN THE VEHICLE

Concept

The Integrated Owner's Manual specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle. The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the Control Display.

Selecting the Owner's Manual

1. Press button.
2. Turn the Controller: open "Vehicle info".
3. Press the Controller.
4. Select the required method of accessing the contents:
   ▷ "Quick reference"
   ▷ "Search by pictures"
Leafing through the Owner's Manual

Page by page with link access
Turn the Controller until the next or previous page is displayed.

Page by page without link access
Scroll through the pages directly while skipping the links.
Highlight the symbol once. Now simply press the Controller to browse from page to page.

Scroll back.

Scroll forward.

Context help

General information
The section of the Owner's Manual relating to the function that is currently selected can be displayed directly.

Opening via Central Information Display (CID)
Change directly to the Options menu from the function on the Control Display:

1. Press button or move the Controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu is displayed.

Opening when a Check Control message is displayed
Directly from the Check Control message on the Control Display:
"Display Owner's Manual"

Changing between a function and the Owner's Manual
To switch from a function, for instance radio, to the Owner's Manual on the Control Display and to alternate between the two displays:

1. Press button or move the Controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu is displayed.
2. "Display Owner's Manual"
4. Press button again to return to last displayed function.
5. Press button to return to the page of the Owner's Manual displayed last.

To alternate continuously between the last displayed function and the last displayed page of the Owner's Manual, repeat steps 4 & 5. Opens a new display every time.

Programmable memory buttons

General information
The Owner's Manual can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly.

Storing
2. Press and hold the desired button, until a signal sounds.

Executing

Press button. The Owner’s Manual is displayed immediately.

MINI MOTORER’S GUIDE APP

Concept
The app specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle.
The app can be displayed on smartphones and tablets.

General information
The Owner’s Manual is available in many countries as an app for iOS or Android in the respective Store.
Entering the vehicle identification number filters the contents.

Vehicles
It is possible to store Owner’s Manuals for various vehicles.
It is also possible to test the app using a demonstration vehicle.

Operating systems and language
The app is available for the iOS and Android operating systems.
The Owner’s Manual is downloaded in the language of the device.

ONLINE OWNER’S MANUAL

Concept
The Online Owner’s Manual specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle.
The Online Owner’s Manual can be displayed in any of today’s browsers.

General information
The Online Owner's Manual is available in many countries. An account on the customer portal may be required.
Entering the vehicle identification number filters the contents.

Vehicles
It is possible to store several individual Owner’s Manuals for various vehicles.

Language
The language is based on whichever language is set in the operating system.

Printing
You can use the print function for automatically formatting and printing out individual chapters.

MEDIA COMPONENTS

General information
The following components are not available to the same extent in all media formats.
Additional information on availability, refer to page 34.

Quick Reference Guide
The Quick Reference Guide provides information on how to operate the vehicle, how to use basic vehicle functions and what to do in case of a breakdown.
Search by illustrations
Based on illustrations, image search provides information and descriptions. This is helpful when the terminology for a feature is not at hand.

Frequently asked questions
This chapter provides answers to frequently asked questions about your vehicle and helpful links to additional information.

Quick links
The chapter on quick links explains the most important information and operating instructions on the basis of various situations.

Videos
The videos explain the main functions of the systems.

Smart Scan
You can use Smart Scan to scan various symbols in the vehicle. After a brief explanation of the symbol in question appears, it is then possible to display the chapter directly.

Smart Scan is only available for the iOS operating system.

Keyword search
You can use keywords to search for information and descriptions in the media.

KEY FEATURES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Printed</th>
<th>Integrated</th>
<th>APP</th>
<th>Online</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All equipment included.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equipment included in vehicle.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quick Reference Guide.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search by illustrations.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequently asked questions.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quick links.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Videos.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smart Scan.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keyword search.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

X: included.
—: not included.
HANDLE ME.
OPENING AND CLOSING

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

REMOTE CONTROL

General information

The vehicle is supplied with two remote controls with integrated key.

Each remote control contains a replaceable battery. Replacing the battery, refer to page 40.

You may set the key functions depending on the optional features and country-specific version. Settings, refer to page 48.

The vehicle stores personal settings for every remote control. Personal Profile, refer to page 46.

The remote controls hold information about required maintenance. Service data in the remote control, refer to page 229.

Safety information

WARNING
People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Take the remote control with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.

WARNING
Unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

WARNING
Unattended children or animals can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
▷ Releasing the parking brake.
▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Overview

1 Unlocking
2 Locking
3 Unlocking the tailgate
4 Panic mode
Unlocking

Press button on the remote control.

Depending on the settings, refer to page 48, the following access points are unlocked.

▷ Driver’s door and fuel filler flap.

Press the button of the remote control again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

▷ All doors, tailgate, and fuel filler flap.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

▷ The settings stored in the driver profile, refer to page 46, are applied.

▷ The interior lights, courtesy lights and the MINI logo projection are switched on.

These functions are not available if the interior lights were switched off manually.

▷ The welcome lights are switched on, if this function was activated.

▷ The alarm system, refer to page 49, is switched off.

The light functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Convenient opening

Safety information

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when opening and closing the convertible top. There is a risk of injury. When opening and closing the convertible top, observe the movement and keep the area of movement clear.

Opening

Press and hold this button on the remote control after unlocking.

The windows and the sliding sun roof integrated into the convertible top are opened, as long as the button on the remote control is pressed.

With Comfort Access:

If close to the vehicle, the convertible top can also be opened.

Press the remote control button again after the sliding sun roof integrated into the convertible top is fully opened. Press and hold the button until the convertible top is fully opened and locked.

Leaving the vicinity of the vehicle stops the motion.

Locking

1. Close the driver’s door.

2. Press button on the remote control.

   All doors, the tailgate, and the fuel filler flap are locked.

   The alarm system, refer to page 49, is switched on.

3. Press and hold this button on the remote control in the area close to the vehicle after locking.

   The exterior mirrors are folded in.

   If the engine or ignition is still switched on when you lock the vehicle, the vehicle horn honks twice. In this case, the engine or ignition must be switched off by means of the Start/Stop button.

With Comfort Access: convenient closing

Safety information

WARNING

With convenient closing, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during convenient closing.
WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when opening and closing the convertible top. There is a risk of injury. When opening and closing the convertible top, observe the movement and keep the area of movement clear.

Closing

Press and hold the button on the remote control in the area close to the vehicle, until the closing operation is completed.

The windows and convertible top close.

Releasing the button stops the closing procedure. Leaving the vicinity of the vehicle stops the motion of the convertible top.

Press button in the vicinity of the vehicle again until the convertible top operation is completed.

Switch on interior lights and courtesy light

Press button on the remote control with the vehicle locked.

The MINI logo projection is also switched on.

These functions are not available if the interior lights were switched off manually.

The light functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

After locking, wait 10 seconds before pressing the button again.

Tailgate

General information

To avoid locking it in the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

Depending on your vehicle's equipment and the country version, it is possible to specify whether the doors are also unlocked when unlocking with the remote control. Adjusting the settings, refer to page 48.

Safety information

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

Opening

Press button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

The tailgate is unlocked and can be swung downward.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

Press button on the remote control and hold for at least 3 seconds.

Briefly press the button on the remote control three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Replacing the battery

1. Remove the integrated key from the remote control, refer to page 42.
2. Slide the integrated key into the opening and raise the cover.

The battery compartment is accessible.
3. Slide the integrated key in the cover of the battery compartment and raise the cover.

4. Push battery in the direction of the arrow using a pointed object and lift it out.

5. Insert a type CR 2032 battery with the positive side facing up.

6. Insert lid and cover.

7. Push the integrated key into the remote control until it engages.

   ![Image of battery being inserted]

   Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

Malfunction

**General information**

A Check Control message is displayed.
Remote control detection by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

▷ The battery of the remote control is discharged. Replacing the battery, refer to page 40.

▷ Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.

▷ Shielding of the remote control due to metal objects.
Do not transport the remote control together with metal objects.

▷ Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the remote control.
Do not transport the remote control together with electronic devices.

▷ Interference of radio transmission by a charging process of mobile devices, for instance charging of a mobile phone.

In the case of interference, the vehicle can be unlocked and locked from the outside with the integrated key, refer to page 42.

Starting the engine via emergency detection of the remote control

It is not possible to start the engine if the remote control has not been detected.

**Additional remote controls**

Additional remote controls are available from a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

**Loss of the remote controls**

A lost remote control can be blocked and replaced by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
It is not possible to switch on the drive-ready state if the remote control has not been detected.

Proceed as follows in this case:

1. Hold the remote control as shown against the marked area on the steering column. Pay attention to the display in the instrument cluster.
2. If the remote control is detected:
   - Start the engine within 10 seconds.

If the remote control is not detected, slightly change the position of the remote control and repeat the procedure.

INTEGRATED KEY

General information
The driver's door can be locked and unlocked without remote control using the integrated key.

The integrated key can also be used for the glove compartment on the front passenger side.

Safety information

WARNING
Unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

NOTE
The door lock is permanently joined with the door. The door handle can be moved. When pulling the door handle with the integrated key inserted, paint or the integrated key can be damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Remove the integrated key before pulling the outside door handle.

Removing

Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the integrated key, arrow 2.

Locking/unlocking via the door lock

1. Remove lid on the door lock.
   - To do this, slide the integrated key into the opening from below and remove the lid.

2. Unlock or lock the door lock using the integrated key.

The other doors must be unlocked or locked from the inside.

Alarm system

The alarm system is not switched on if the vehicle is locked with the integrated key.

The alarm system is triggered when the door is opened, if the vehicle has been unlocked via the door lock. In order to stop this alarm, unlock vehicle with the remote control or switch on the ignition, if needed, through emergency
detection of the remote control, refer to page 41.

**BUTTONS FOR THE CENTRAL LOCKING SYSTEM**

**General information**
In the event of a severe accident, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning system and interior lights come on.

**Overview**

![Buttons for the central locking system.](image)

**Locking**
Press the button with the doors closed.

- The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.
- The vehicle is not secured against theft when locking.

**Unlocking**
Press button.

**Opening**

- Press button to unlock the doors together, and then pull the door handle above the armrest.
- Pull the door opener on the door to be opened. The other door remain locked.

**COMFORT ACCESS**

**Concept**
The vehicle can be accessed without activating the remote control. All you need to do is to have the remote control with you, such as in your pants pocket. The vehicle automatically detects the remote control when it is in close proximity or in the car's interior.

**General information**
Comfort Access supports the following functions:
- Unlocking and locking the vehicle.
- Convenient closing.
- Opening tailgate.

**Functional requirements**
- To lock the vehicle, the remote control must be located outside of the vehicle near the doors.
- The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.

**Unlocking**

![Unlocking](image)

On the driver's or front passenger's outer door handle, press the button.

Depending on the settings, refer to page 48, only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap may be unlocked. Unlike when unlocking with the remote control, pressing the button on the outer door handle again does not unlock the
other vehicle access points. Rather, the vehicle is locked again.

If a door of a locked vehicle was opened from the inside via the door opener, pressing the button on the outer door handle first locks the vehicle again. To unlock, the button on the outer door handle must be pressed again. This is the case whether the vehicle was locked automatically after driving off or via the central locking system button from the inside.

**Locking**

Press and hold down the button on the driver's or front passenger's outer door handle.

In addition to locking, the convertible top and the windows are closed.

Press and hold the button, until the convertible top is fully closed.

The exterior mirrors are folded in.

**Closing**

**Open tailgate**

**General information**

If you open the tailgate via Comfort Access, locked doors will not be unlocked.

To avoid locking it in the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

**Safety information**

**WARNING**

With convenient closing, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during convenient closing.

**WARNING**

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

**Safety information**

Body parts can be jammed when opening and closing the convertible top. There is a risk of injury. When opening and closing the convertible top, observe the movement and keep the area of movement clear.
Opening

Press button on the exterior of the tailgate.

Malfunction

Remote control detection by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

▷ The battery of the remote control is discharged. Replacing the battery, refer to page 40.

▷ Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.

▷ Shielding of the remote control due to metal objects.

Do not transport the remote control together with metal objects.

▷ Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the remote control.

Do not transport the remote control together with electronic devices.

Wet or snowy conditions may disrupt the locking request recognition function on the door handles.

In the case of a malfunction, unlock and lock the vehicle using the buttons of the remote control or using the integrated key, refer to page 42.

TAILGATE

General information

To avoid locking it in the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

Depending on your vehicle's equipment and the country version, it is possible to specify whether the doors are also unlocked when unlocking with the remote control. Adjusting the settings, refer to page 48.

Safety information

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.

Opening from the outside

▷ Without Comfort Access: unlock vehicle.

With Comfort Access: unlock the vehicle or have the remote control with you.

Press button on the tailgate.

▷ Press button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

Depending on the setting, the doors may also be unlocked. Unlocking with the remote control, refer to page 40.

The tailgate is unlocked and can be swung downward.
Opening from the inside
With the vehicle stationary, press the button in the driver’s floor area.

Closing
To close the tailgate, swivel it upwards and press it closed.

Trunk emergency unlocking
Pull the handle inside the cargo area. The tailgate unlocks.

PERSONAL PROFILE

Concept
Via Personal Profiles, individual settings for several drivers can be stored and called up again when required.

General information
There are three driver profiles with which personal vehicle settings can be stored. Every remote control has one of these driver profiles assigned.

If the vehicle is unlocked using a remote control, the assigned personal driver profile will be activated. All settings stored in the driver profile are automatically applied.

If several drivers use their own remote control, the vehicle will adjust the personal settings during unlocking. These settings are also restored, if the vehicle has been used in the meantime by a person with a different remote control.

Changes to the settings are automatically stored in the driver profile currently activated.

If another driver profile is selected via the Central Information Display (CID), the settings stored in it will be applied automatically. The new driver profile is assigned to the remote control currently used.

There is an additional guest profile available that is not assigned to any remote control: it can be used to apply settings in the vehicle without changing the personal driver profiles.

Functional requirements
For the system to be able to identify the driver profile associated to a particular driver, the detected remote control must be clearly allocated to the driver.

This is the case when:
▷ The driver is only carrying his or her own remote control.
▷ The driver unlocks the vehicle.
▷ The driver gets into the vehicle through the driver’s door.

Settings
The settings for the following systems and functions are stored in the active profile. The scope of storable settings depends on country and equipment.
▷ Unlocking and locking.
▷ Lights.
▷ Radio.
▷ Instrument cluster.
▷ Programmable memory buttons.
▷ Volumes, tone.
▷ Control Display.
▷ Climate control.
▷ Navigation.
▷ PDC Park Distance Control.
Profile management

Opening profiles
Regardless of the remote control in use, a different profile may be activated. This allows you to call up personal vehicle settings, even if you did not unlock the vehicle with your own remote control.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. Select a profile.

The following functions are executed:
▷ All settings stored in the called-up profile are automatically applied.
▷ The called-up profile is assigned to the remote control being used at the time.
▷ If the profile is already assigned to a different remote control, this profile will apply to both remote controls.

Using a guest profile
The guest profile is for individual settings that are stored in none of the three personal profiles.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. "Guest"
4. Adjust the settings.

The guest profile cannot be renamed. It is not assigned to the current remote control.

Renaming profiles
A personal name can be assigned to every profile to avoid confusion between the profiles.
Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
   The active profile is selected.
3. Open "Options".
4. "Rename current profile"

Reset profiles
The settings of the profile currently in use are reset to their factory settings.
Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Reset current profile"

Exporting profiles
Most settings of the profile currently in use can be exported.
Exporting is helpful when storing and retrieving personal settings, for instance before delivering the vehicle to a workshop. Profiles can be taken to another vehicle equipped with the Personal Profile function.
Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. "Export profile"
4. "USB device"

Importing profiles
Profiles stored on a USB storage device can be imported via the USB interface. Existing settings are overwritten with the imported profile.
Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. "Import profile"
4. "USB device"

Display profile list during start
The profile list can be displayed during each start to select the desired profile.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Display user list at startup"

System limits
A clear assignment between the remote control and driver may not be possible in the following cases, for example.

▷ The passenger unlocks the vehicle with his or her own remote control, but another person is driving.
▷ The driver unlocks the vehicle via Comfort Access and has multiple remote controls with him or her.
▷ The driver changes, but the vehicle is not locked and unlocked.
▷ Multiple remote controls are located outside of the vehicle.

SETTINGS

General information
Depending on your vehicle's equipment and the country version, various settings for opening and closing are possible.

These settings are stored for the driver profile, refer to page 46, currently used.

Unlocking

Doors
Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. "Settings"
2. "Doors/key"
3. Select the symbol.
4. Select the desired function.
   ▷ "Driver's door only"
      Only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.
   ▷ "All doors"
      The entire vehicle is unlocked.

Tailgate
Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. "Settings"
2. "Doors/key"
3. Select the symbol.
4. Select the desired setting.
   ▷ "Tailgate"
      Only the tailgate is unlocked.
   ▷ "Tailgate + door(s)"
      The tailgate and the doors are unlocked.

Depending on optional features and country version, this setting is not offered in some cases.

Automatic locking
Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. "Settings"
2. "Doors/key"
3. Select the desired setting.
   ▷ "Lock if no door is opened"
The vehicle locks automatically after a short period of time if no door is opened after unlocking.

▷ "Lock after start driving"
The vehicle locks automatically after you drive off.

**Confirmation signals from the vehicle**

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. 📅 "Settings"
2. "Doors/key"
3. Select the desired setting.
   ▷ With alarm system:
      "Acoustic sig. lock/unlock"
      Unlocking is signaled by one honk of the horn.
   ▷ "Flash when lock/unlock"
      Unlocking is signaled by two flashes, locking by one.

**ALARM SYSTEM**

**General information**

When the vehicle is locked, the vehicle alarm system reacts to the following changes:

▷ Unauthorized opening of a door, the hood or the tailgate.
▷ Movements in the car’s interior.
▷ Changes in the vehicle tilt, e. g., during attempts at stealing a wheel or when towing the vehicle.
▷ Disconnected battery voltage.
▷ Improper use of the socket for Onboard Diagnosis.

The alarm system signals these changes visually and acoustically:

▷ Acoustic alarm.
   Depending on local regulations, the acoustic alarm may be suppressed.

▷ By switching on the hazard warning system.
▷ By flashing the daytime running lights.

**Overview**

![Indicator light on the interior mirror.](image)

**Switching on/off**

When you unlock and lock the vehicle, either with the remote control or with Comfort Access, the alarm system is switched off and on at the same time.

**Opening the doors with the alarm system switched on**

The alarm system is triggered when a door is opened if the door was unlocked using the integrated key in the door lock.

Switching off the alarm, refer to page 50.

**Opening the tailgate with the alarm system switched on**

The tailgate can be opened even when the alarm system is switched on.

After the tailgate is closed, it is locked and monitored again provided the doors are locked. The hazard warning system flashes once.

**Panic mode**

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

▷ Press button on the remote control and hold for at least 3 seconds.
Briefly press the button on the remote control three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

**Signals of the indicator light**
- The indicator light flashes briefly every 2 seconds:
  - The alarm system is switched on.
- Indicator light flashes for approx. 10 seconds, then it flashes briefly every 2 seconds:
  - Interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor are not active, as doors, hood, or tailgate are not correctly closed. Correctly closed access points are secured.
  - When the still open access points are closed, interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor will be switched on.
- The indicator light goes out after unlocking:
  - The vehicle has not been tampered with.
- The indicator light flashes after unlocking until the engine ignition is switched on, but no longer than approx. 5 minutes:
  - An alarm has been triggered.

**Tilt alarm sensor**
The tilt of the vehicle is monitored.
The alarm system responds in situations such as attempts to steal a wheel or when the vehicle is towed.

**Interior motion sensor**
The car’s interior is monitored to the height of the seats. The alarm system is switched on together with the interior motion sensor even when the convertible top is open. Falling objects such as leaves can trigger the alarm unintentionally.

**Avoiding unintentional alarms**

**General information**
The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can trigger an alarm, although no unauthorized action occurred.

Possible situations for an unwanted alarm:
- In automatic vehicle washes.
- In duplex garages.
- During transport on trains carrying vehicles, at sea or on a trailer.
- With animals in the vehicle.
- At the gas station: if the vehicle is locked after refueling starts.

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior motion sensor can be switched off in such situations.

**Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor**
Press the remote control button again within 10 seconds as soon as the vehicle is locked.
The indicator light lights up for approx. 2 seconds and then continues to flash.
The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are switched off until the vehicle is locked again.

**Switching off the alarm**
- Unlock the vehicle with the remote control or switch on the ignition, if needed through emergency detection of remote control, refer to page 41.
- With Comfort Access: If you have the remote control with you, unlock the vehicle using the button on the driver’s side or passenger side door.
POWER WINDOWS

General information
If an accident of a certain severity occurs, the windows are automatically closed except a gap.

Safety information
WARNING
When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the windows is clear during opening and closing.

Overview

Opening

▶ Press the switch to the resistance point.
The window opens while the switch is being held.

▶ Press the switch beyond the resistance point.
The window opens automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Closing

▶ Pull the switch to the resistance point.
The window closes while the switch is being held.

▶ Pull the switch beyond the resistance point.
The window closes automatically if the door is closed. Pulling the switch again stops the motion.

▶ Pull the switch.
All side windows close simultaneously while the switch is being held.

Convenient closing via the remote control, refer to page 39.
Closing via Comfort Access, refer to page 44.

Jam protection system

General information
If closing force exceeds a specific threshold as a window closes, closing is interrupted.
The window opens slightly.
Safety information

**WARNING**
Accessories on the windows such as antennas can impact jam protection. There is a risk of injury. Do not install accessories in the area of movement of the windows.

Closing without the jam protection system

In case of danger from the outside or if ice might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. ![Pull](#) Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there.
   The window closes with limited jam protection. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.

2. ![Pull](#) Pull the switch past the resistance point again within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there.
   The window closes without jam protection.

Malfunction

**General information**

In certain situations a window can only be operated to a limited extent.

- After a power failure during the opening or closing process, the a window can only be operated to a limited extent. The system must be initialized in this case.
- The power window motors are equipped with overheating protection. If a window is opened and closed several times within a short period of time, the overheating protection switches the motor off temporarily. Depending on the degree of overheating, it may only be possible to close the window or it may not be possible to operate it at all.

In this case: allow the power window motor to cool down.

Initializing the system

The system can be initialized when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running.

During initialization, the affected window closes without jam protection.

**WARNING**

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the windows is clear during opening and closing.

1. Open the affected window completely.
2. ![Pull](#) Pull the switch to the resistance point and hold.
   The window closes.
3. ![Pull](#) Continue holding the switch pulled to the resistance point.
   The window opens and closes once or twice after approx. 15 seconds, depending on the vehicle's equipment.

CONVERTIBLE TOP WITH INTEGRATED SLIDING SUN ROOF

Overview

Convertible top, sliding sun roof switch
Sliding sun roof

General information
Before closing the sliding sun roof, remove any foreign objects from the windshield frame; otherwise, closing may be prevented.

Opening
Press the switch backward, until the desired position is reached or the sliding sun roof is fully open.

Closing
Press the switch forward, until the desired position is reached or the sliding sun roof is closed.

Convertible top

General information
The convertible top can be opened or closed at speeds up to approx. 18 mph/30 km/h.
If the vehicle is accelerated above a speed of approx. 18 mph/30 km/h while the convertible top is being moved, the convertible top movement stops.

Follow the following information:

▷ While the convertible top is moving, it is not possible to open the tailgate.
▷ If possible, close the convertible top when the vehicle is parked. A closed convertible top protects it from weather-related damage and to some extent from theft.
▷ Even when the convertible top is closed, only store valuables in the locked cargo area or in the locked glove compartment.
▷ At higher speeds, vacuum produced in the car’s interior causes the convertible top to begin to flutter. Increase the air flow via the ventilation so that no vacuum is produced in the vehicle.
▷ It is not possible to start the engine and operate the convertible top simultaneously. When the engine is started using the Start/Stop button or using the Auto Start/Stop function, the convertible top movement is briefly interrupted.
▷ Opening a door interrupts closure of the convertible top.
▷ When loading the cargo area, make sure that the cargo does not push against the cargo area partition, refer to page 55, from below.
▷ In order to protect the battery, move the convertible top only when the engine is running if possible.
▷ Before closing the convertible top, remove any foreign objects from the windshield frame; otherwise, closing may be prevented.

Safety information

NOTE
Incorrect operation can damage the convertible top and other parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of damage to property. During operation, heed the following points:

▷ Keep the area of movement of the convertible top clear because the convertible top swivels out upward. Maximum area of movement: 78.8 inches/2 meters.
▷ Fully close the tailgate.
▷ Do not leave the convertible top open for more than a day while it is wet.
▷ Do not open the convertible top, if it is wet, covered in snow, iced up, or dirty.
▷ Do not place objects on the convertible top.
▷ The rollover protection system may not be triggered.
Do not operate convertible top on uneven sections of road.
Always open or close the convertible top completely. The convertible top is only locked in the final positions.
Make sure that no objects are on the cargo cover when opening the convertible top.

**WARNING**
Body parts can be jammed when opening and closing the convertible top. There is a risk of injury. When opening and closing the convertible top, observe the movement and keep the area of movement clear.

**WARNING**
When operating the convertible top while driving, the view to the rear may be limited. At speeds above 20 mph/30 km/h the convertible top remains in its current position. There is a danger of accidents and property damage. When operating the convertible top while driving, observe traffic attentively and, if necessary, reduce speed. Do not operate while backing up or with wind.

**WARNING**
The convertible top is not suitable for the mounting of roof carrier systems. The roof carrier could come loose. There is a risk of an accident. Do not attach any roof carrier systems to the convertible top.

**WARNING**
A convertible top that is not completely open or closed is not locked and can open by itself while driving due to the wind. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the convertible top is always completely open or closed.

**Functional requirements**
The following requirements must be fulfilled in order to be able to move the convertible top.

The ignition or radio-ready state must be switched on.
The cargo area partition, refer to page 55, is stored and latched in the bottom position.
The tailgate is closed.
The external temperature is above 14 °F/-10 °C.
The voltage of the vehicle electrical system is sufficient.
The convertible top drive is not overheating.
Vehicle speed is below 18 mph/30 km/h.
The windows can be lowered.

If this requirement is not met, a check control message is displayed.

**Operating from the inside**

**Opening**
Press the switch backward and hold until the sliding sunroof is open.
Press the switch backward again and hold. The windows roll down and the convertible top opens while the switch is being pulled. After the convertible top is completely open, the switch can be held or pressed again briefly in order to raise the windows.

**Closing**
Push the switch forward and hold. The windows are lowered, the convertible top is closed and the windows are raised again while the switch is being held.

**Preventing an interruption**
Press and hold the switch, until the convertible top is fully open or closed. A Check Control
message is displayed when the opening procedure has finished.

The convertible top movement is interrupted if the switch is released. The sequence can be continued in the desired direction using the switch.
Operate switch again until the convertible operation is terminated.

**Operating from the outside**
When equipped with Comfort Access the convertible top can also be operated from outside.
▷ Convenient opening, refer to page 39, via the remote control.
▷ Convenient closing, refer to page 39, via the remote control.
▷ Closing via Comfort Access, refer to page 43.

**Cargo area partition**
With the convertible top closed, the cargo area volume can be expanded.
Expanding the cargo area volume, refer to page 181.

**Manually closing the convertible top**

**General information**
If the convertible top has an electrical malfunction, it can be closed manually. Two persons are necessary to do this.
If possible, have a convertible top manually closed by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

**Safety information**

⚠️ **WARNING**
In case of an electrical malfunction, the convertible top cannot be locked in the fully open position. The convertible top will rise up while the vehicle is moving. There is a risk of an accident. Do not open the closed convertible top manually. ◄

**Before closing**
1. Lower the windows completely.
2. Switching off the ignition.
3. Take the hexagon wrench and screwdriver out of the onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 231.

**Unlocking the convertible top**
1. Loosen and remove the screw on both sides of the vehicle using the hexagon wrench.
2. On the left side of the vehicle only: raise the cover and pull the sensor outward and off.
3. Raise the cover on both sides of the vehicle, then slide it under the trim, first toward the
inside, arrow 1, and then toward the front, arrow 2.

Swivel the cable out sideways so it cannot be pinched.

4. Turn the cover under the trim as far outward as possible.

Closing the convertible top
1. Grasp the convertible top with two people, with both hands on the two side frames.

2. Lift out the convertible top simultaneously on both sides and swivel forward onto the windshield panel.

To take out the convertible top, pull forcefully on the side frame. Begin with an upward movement and then change to a forward movement.

3. In the vehicle, lift the cover in the center of the roof using the screwdriver. Apply the screwdriver to the recesses, arrows.

5. Loosen and remove the two screws on both sides of the vehicle using the hexagon wrench.

6. Only on the left side of the vehicle: slightly lift the side frame, arrow 1, and pull the sensor with the cable forward out from the guide, arrow 2.
4. For this purpose, insert the hexagon wrench into the designated receptacle in the center of the roof and press push upward, arrow 1.

   Turn the hexagon wrench counterclockwise to open the side frame lock.

5. Pull of the locking elements from the pins on the left and right side of the side frames, arrow.

6. Insert the pins on the side frames into the receptacles on the windshield frame.

7. Turn the hexagon wrench clockwise to close the side frame lock.

8. Continue turning the hexagon wrench clockwise to close the sliding sun roof.

WIND DEFLECTOR

Concept
The wind deflector reduces the air movement in the car’s interior when driving with the convertible top down.

Safety information

NOTE
When moving the front seats back, the wind deflector can be damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement is clear prior to moving the front seats back. ◄

WARNING
Body parts can be jammed when operating the wind deflector. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement around the wind deflector is clear when installing and removing it and folding it up. ◄

WARNING
Objects placed on the installed wind deflector can be thrown into the car’s interior or endanger other traffic participants, for instance in case of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. The objects can damage the wind deflector. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not place any objects on the installed wind deflector. ◄

Installation
The wind deflector is located in a protective jacket in the cargo area.

To protect the head restraints from damage, slide the rear head restraints into the upper position prior to installation and removal.

1. Take the wind deflector out of the protective jacket.
Fully unfold the wind deflector so that the handle, arrow 1, folds down and locks the wind deflector.

Press the wind deflector downward, while inserting the pins in the corresponding fixing points, arrows 2.

2. Open the rear side window, if necessary.
Insert wind deflector from one side of the vehicle with the pins in the corresponding fixing points on the opposite side of the vehicle.

5. Press the wind deflector downward in the middle, until the handle engages, arrows 1. Grasp the inner framework of the wind deflector and fold it up, arrow 2.

3. To release the lock, fold the handle up and hold it.

Removing
Proceed in reverse sequence.

4. Press the wind deflector inwardly and up, arrow 1, to the extent that the wind deflector can be positioned in front of the fixing points on the installation side.
Release the handle.
SETTINGS

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

SITTING SAFELY

An ideal seating position that meets the needs of the occupants can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving.

In the event of an accident, the correct seating position plays an important role. Follow the information in the following chapters:

- Seats, refer to page 59.
- Safety belts, refer to page 61.
- Head restraints, refer to page 63.
- Airbags, refer to page 117.

FRONT SEATS

Safety information

⚠️ WARNING

Seat adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected movements of the seat. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of an accident. Only adjust the seat on the driver’s side when the vehicle is stationary.⚠

⚠️ WARNING

With a backrest inclined too far to the rear, the efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts can no longer be ensured. There is a risk of sliding under the safety belt in an accident. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Adjust the seat prior to starting the trip. Adjust the backrest so that it is in the most upright position as possible and do not adjust again while driving.⚠

⚠️ WARNING

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.⚠

Adjusting seats

Overview

1 Forward/backward
2 Thigh support
3 Height
4 Backrest tilt
**Forward/backward**

Pull the lever and slide the seat in the desired direction.

After releasing the lever, move the seat forward or back slightly making sure it engages properly.

**Height**

Pull the lever up or press it down as often as needed to reach the desired height.

**Backrest tilt**

Pull the lever and apply your weight to the backrest or lift it off, as necessary.

---

**Lumbar support**

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright posture.

Turn the wheel in order to increase or decrease the curvature.

**Thigh support**

Pull the lever at the front of the seat and adjust the thigh support.

---

**Entering the rear**

**Safety information**

⚠️ **WARNING**

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.
WARNING
Unexpected movements of the backrest while driving may occur due to an unlocked backrest. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of injury. Fold back and lock the backrests before driving.

Folding down the backrest
1. Pull lever up to the stop.
2. Fold backrest forward.
3. Push the seat forward.

Original position
The driver's seat features a mechanical memory function for forward/back and backrest adjustment.
1. Push the seat back into the original position.
2. Fold back the backrest to lock the seat.
If the backrest is folded back when the seat is not yet in the original position, the seat engages in the current position. In this case, manually adjust longitudinal direction, refer to page 60.

Front seat heating

Overview

Switching on
Press button once for each temperature level.
The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.
If the trip is continued within approx. 15 minutes after a stop, seat heating is activated automatically with the temperature selected last.
When GREEN Mode is activated, refer to page 190, the heater output is reduced.

Switching off
Press and hold the button, until the LEDs go out.

SAFETY BELTS

Number of safety belts and safety belt buckles
The vehicle is fitted with four safety belts to ensure occupant safety. However, they can only offer protection when adjusted correctly.

General information
Always make sure that safety belts are being worn by all occupants before driving off. Al-
though airbags enhance safety by providing added protection, they are not a substitute for safety belts.
The upper shoulder strap's anchorage point will be correct for adult seat occupants of every build if the seat is correctly adjusted.

Safety information

WARNING
Use of a safety belt to buckle more than one person will potentially defeat the ability of the safety belt to serve its protective function. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Infants and children are not allowed on an occupant’s lap, but must be transported and secured in designated child restraint systems.

WARNING
The efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts, can be limited or lost when safety belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that all occupants are wearing safety belts correctly.

WARNING
The efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts, may not be fully functional or fail in the following situations:

▷ The safety belts or safety belt buckles are damaged, soiled, or changed in any other way.
▷ Belt tensioners or belt retractors were modified.

Safety belts can be imperceptibly damaged in the event of an accident. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not modify safety belts, safety belt buckles, belt tensioners, belt retractors or belt anchors and keep them clean.

Have the safety belts checked after an accident at the dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Correct use of safety belts

▷ Wear the safety belt twist-free and tight to your body over your lap and shoulders.
▷ Wear the safety belt deep on your hips over your lap. The safety belt may not press on your stomach.
▷ Do not rub the safety belt against sharp edges, or guide it or jam it in across hard or fragile objects.
▷ Avoid thick clothing.
▷ Re-tighten the safety belt frequently upward around your upper body.

Buckling the safety belt

1. Slowly guide the safety belt out of the holder when fastening it.
2. Insert the tongue plate into the safety belt buckle. The safety belt buckle must engage audibly.

Unbuckling the safety belt

1. Hold the safety belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the belt buckle.
3. Guide the safety belt back into its roll-up mechanism.
Rear belt guide

When fastening the safety belts on the rear seats, make sure that the belt guide loop is closed.

Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat

Display in the instrument cluster

The indicator light lights up and a signal sounds. Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly. The safety belt reminder can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

FRONT HEAD RESTRAINTS

Safety information

WARNING

A missing protective effect due to removed or not correctly adjusted head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

▷ Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
▷ Adjust the head restraint so its center supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.
▷ Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.

WARNING

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

▷ Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
▷ Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
▷ Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
▷ Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.

Adjusting the height: John Cooper Works sport seat

The height of the head restraints cannot be adjusted.

Adjusting the height

To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.
To raise: push the head restraint up.
After setting the height, move the head restraint up or down slightly, making sure it engages properly.
Removing: John Cooper Works sport seat
The head restraints cannot be removed.

Removing
Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.

1. Fold the seat backrest forward if needed.
2. Pull head restraint up as far as possible.
3. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

Installing
Proceed in the reverse order to install the head restraint.

REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS

Safety information

WARNING
A missing protective effect due to removed or not correctly adjusted head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

▷ Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
▷ Adjust the head restraint so its center supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.

Adjusting the height

▷ To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.
▷ To raise: push the head restraint up.
After setting the height, move the head restraint up or down slightly, making sure it engages properly.
Removing
Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.

1. Fold down the rear seat backrest, refer to page 180, in question.
2. Pull head restraint up against the resistance.
3. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

Installing
Proceed in the reverse order to install the head restraint.

MIRRORS

Exterior mirrors

General information
The mirror on the front passenger side is more curved than the driver's side mirror.

Safety information

WARNING
Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. The distance to the traffic behind could be incorrectly estimated, for instance while changing lanes. There is a risk of an accident. Estimate the distance to the traffic behind by looking over your shoulder.

Overview

1  Settings
2  Selecting a mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor
3  Folding in and out

Selecting a mirror

To change over to the other mirror:
Slide the switch.

Adjusting electrically

Press button.
The mirror movement follows the button movement.

Malfunction
In case of an electrical malfunction, adjust the mirror by pressing the edges of the mirror glass.

Folding in and out

NOTE
Depending on the vehicle width, the vehicle can be damaged in vehicle washes. There is a risk of damage to property. Before washing, fold in the mirrors by hand or with the button.
Press button.

Folding is only possible up to a speed of approx. 15 mph/20 km/h.
Folding the mirrors in and out is helpful in the following situations:
▶ In vehicle washes.
▶ On narrow roads.

Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

**Automatic heating**
Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated whenever the ignition is switched on.

**Automatic dimming feature**
The exterior mirror on the driver’s side is automatically dimmed. Photocells in the car's interior mirror, refer to page 66, are used to control this.

**Automatic Curb Monitor, exterior mirror**

**Concept**
If reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass on the front passenger side is tilted downward. This improves your view of the curb and other low-lying obstacles when parking, for instance.

**Activating**
1. Slide the switch to the driver's side mirror position.
2. Engage selector lever position R.

**Deactivating**
Slide the switch to the passenger's side mirror position.

---

**Interior mirror, manually dimmable**

**Flip lever**
To reduce the blinding effect of the interior mirror, flip the lever forward.

**Turn knob**
Turn the knob to reduce the blinding effect by the interior mirror.

**Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature**

**Overview**
Photocells are used for control:
In the mirror glass.
▷ On the back of the mirror.

**Functional requirements**
▷ Keep the photocells clean.
▷ Do not cover the area between the interior mirror and the windshield.

**STEERING WHEEL**

**Safety information**

⚠️ **WARNING**

Steering wheel adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is stationary only.

**Settings**

1. Fold the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seating position.
3. Fold the lever back up.
TRANSPORTING CHILDREN SAFELY

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

THE RIGHT PLACE FOR CHILDREN

Safety information

WARNING

Unattended children or animals can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
▷ Releasing the parking brake.
▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Always transport children in the rear seat

General information

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is in the rear seat.

Transport children younger than 13 years of age or shorter than 5 ft/150 cm only in the rear seat in suitable child restraint systems designed for the age, weight and size of the child. Children 13 years of age or older must wear a safety belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, weight, and size.

Safety information

WARNING

The safety belt cannot be fastened correctly on children shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm without suitable additional child restraint systems. The efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts, can be limited or lost when safety belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Secure children shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm using suitable child restraint systems.

Children on the front passenger seat

General information

Before using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, ensure that the front, knee, and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated. Automatic deactivation of front-seat passenger airbags, refer to page 119.
Safety information

WARNING
Active front-seat passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front-seat passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light lights up.

WARNING
The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEMS

General information
Pay attention to the specifications of the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using child restraint systems.

In order to facilitate the installation of a back-facing child restraint system in the rear:
Move the front passenger seat as far up as possible before folding down the backrest.

Safety information

WARNING
The protective effect of damaged child restraint systems or of child restraint systems exposed to an accident and their fastening systems can be limited or lost. A child can e.g., not sufficiently restrained, for instance in the event of an accident or braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Have damaged child restraint systems or of child restraint systems exposed to an accident and their fastening systems checked and possibly replaced by the dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

WARNING
The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

On the rear seats
In order to facilitate the installation of a back-facing child restraint system:
Move the front passenger seat as far up as possible before folding down the backrest.

On the front passenger seat

Deactivating airbags

WARNING
Active front-seat passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front-seat passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light lights up.

After installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.
Deactivate the front-seat passenger airbags automatically, refer to page 119.
Seat position and height
Before installing a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back as possible and adjust its height to the highest and thus best possible position for the belt and to offer optimal protection in the event of an accident.
If the upper anchorage of the safety belt is located in front of the belt guide of the child seat, move the front passenger seat carefully forward until the best possible belt guide position is reached.

Child seat security

The rear safety belts and the front passenger safety belt can be permanently locked to fasten child restraint systems.

Locking the safety belt
1. Pull out the belt strap completely.
2. Secure the child restraint system with the safety belt.
3. Allow the belt strap to be pulled in and pull it tight against the child restraint system. The safety belt is locked.

Unlocking the safety belt
1. Unbuckle the safety belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the belt strap to be pulled in completely.

LATCH CHILD RESTRAINT FIXING SYSTEM

General information
LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tether for Children. Pay attention to the operating and safety information of the child restraint system manufacturer when installing and using LATCH child restraint fixing systems.

Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors
The lower anchors may be used to attach the CRS to the vehicle seat up to a combined child and CRS weight of 65 lb/30 kg when the child is restrained by the internal harnesses.

Safety information

WARNING
If the LATCH child restraint fixing systems are not correctly engaged, the protective effect of the LATCH child restraint fixing system can be limited. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the lower anchors are securely engaged and that the LATCH child restraint fixing system fits securely against the backrest. ➡
Position

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Symbol" /></td>
<td>The corresponding symbol shows the mounts for the lower LATCH anchors. Seats equipped with lower anchors are marked with a pair, 2, of LATCH symbols.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Before installing LATCH child restraint fixing systems**

Pull the safety belt away from the area of the child restraint system.

**Assembly of LATCH child restraint fixing systems**

1. Install child restraint system, see manufacturer’s information.
2. Ensure that both LATCH anchors are properly connected.

**Upper LATCH retaining strap**

For Canadian customers Only.

The following statement is required by Transport Canada:

This vehicle is not equipped with user-ready tether anchorages. As such neither a child restraint system, nor a booster cushion, requiring the use of a tether strap can be properly secured in the vehicle.
VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

START/STOP BUTTON

Concept

Pressing the Start/Stop button switches the ignition on or off and starts the engine.

Steptronic transmission: the engine starts in selector lever position P or N with the brake pedal pressed when you press the Start/Stop button.

Manual transmission: the engine starts with the clutch pedal pressed when the Start/Stop button is pressed.

Ignition on

Manual transmission: press the Start/Stop button without stepping on the clutch pedal.

Steptronic transmission: press the Start/Stop button, and do not press on the brake pedal at the same time.

All vehicle systems are ready for operation.

Most of the indicator/warning lights in the instrument cluster light up for a varied length of time.

To save battery power when the engine is off, switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers.

Safety measures

The ignition is switched off automatically in the following situations while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is off:

- When locking the vehicle, and when the low beams are switched on.
- Shortly before the battery is discharged completely, so that the engine can still be started. This function is only available when the low beams are switched off.
- When opening or closing the driver door, if the driver’s safety belt is unbuckled and the low beams are switched off.
- While the driver’s safety belt is unbuckled with driver’s door open and low beams off.
- When the front doors are opened if there is no other person sitting in the front seats.
- The low beams switch to parking lights after some minutes of no use.

Steptronic transmission with a tap-operated selector lever, refer to page 85: when switching off the ignition, the selector lever position P is
engaged automatically if the selector lever position D or R is engaged.

**Radio-ready state**

**General information**
In the radio-ready state, certain power consumers remain ready for operation.

**Activating**
With the engine running, press the Start/Stop button.
If the engine is not running and the ignition is switched on: the system automatically activates radio-ready state when the door is opened if the lights are switched off or the daytime running lights are switched on.
The radio-ready state remains active if, for instance the ignition is automatically switched off for the following reasons:
▷ Opening or closing the driver's door.
▷ Unfastening of the driver's safety belt.
▷ When automatically switching from low beams to parking lights.

**Switching off automatically**
The radio-ready state is switched off automatically in the following situations:
▷ If the driver's or front passenger door is opened when exiting the vehicle, with the engine switched off manually.
▷ If the ignition is switched off manually with the Start/Stop button.
▷ After approx. 8 minutes.
▷ When the vehicle is locked using the central locking system.
▷ Shortly before the battery is discharged completely, so that the engine can still be started.

**STARTING THE ENGINE**

**Safety information**

⚠️ **DANGER**
If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

⚠️ **WARNING**
An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.
In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:
▷ Set the parking brake.
▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

⚠️ **NOTE**
In the case of repeated starting attempts or repeated starting in quick succession, the fuel is not burned or is inadequately burned. The catalytic converter can overheat. There is a risk of damage to property. Avoid repeated starting in quick succession.

**Steptronic transmission**

**Starting the engine**
1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Engage selector lever position P or N.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.
The ignition is activated automatically for a brief time and is stopped as soon as the engine starts.

**Manual transmission**

**Starting the engine**
1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press on the clutch pedal and shift to neutral.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

The ignition is activated automatically for a brief time and is stopped as soon as the engine starts.

**ENGINE STOP**

**Safety information**

**WARNING**
Unattended children or animals can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

**WARNING**
An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.

**Steptronic transmission**

**Switching off the engine**
1. When the vehicle is stationary, apply the parking brake.
2. Engage selector lever position P.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.
   - The engine is switched off.
   - The radio-ready state is switched on.

**Manual transmission**

**Switching off the engine**
1. With the vehicle at a standstill, press the Start/Stop button.
   - The engine is switched off.
   - The radio-ready state is switched on.
2. Shift into first gear or reverse.
3. Set the parking brake.

**AUTO START/STOP FUNCTION**

**Concept**
The Auto Start/Stop function helps save fuel. The system switches off the engine during a stop, for instance in traffic congestion or at traffic lights. The ignition remains switched on. The engine starts automatically for driving off.

After every start of the engine using the Start/Stop button, the Auto Start/Stop function is in the last selected state, refer to page 76. When the Auto Start/Stop function is active, it is available when the vehicle is traveling faster than about 3 mph/5 km/h.
Depending on the selected driving mode, refer to page 139, the system is automatically activated or deactivated.

**Engine stop**

**Functional requirements**

The engine is switched off automatically during a stop under the following conditions:

**Manual transmission:**
- Neutral is engaged and the clutch pedal is not pressed.
- The driver's safety belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

**Steptronic transmission:**
- The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- The brake pedal remains depressed while the vehicle is stopped.
- The driver's safety belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

In order to be able to release the brake pedal, engage the selector lever in position P. The engine remains off.

To continue driving depress the brake pedal. When a gear is engaged, the engine starts automatically.

The air flow from the air conditioner is reduced when the engine is switched off.

**Displays in the instrument cluster**

The display indicates that the Auto Start/Stop function is ready for an Automatic engine start.

The display indicates that the conditions for an automatic engine stop have not been met.

**Functional limitations**

The engine is not switched off automatically in the following situations:
- External temperature too low.
- The external temperature is high and automatic climate control is running.
- The car's interior has not yet been heated or cooled to the required level.
- The engine is not yet at operating temperature.
- The wheels are at a sharp angle or the steering wheel is being turned.
- After driving in reverse.
- Fogging of the windows when the automatic climate control is switched on.
- The vehicle battery charge is very low.
- At higher elevations.
- The hood is unlocked.
- The parking assistant is activated.
- Stop-and-go traffic.
- Selector lever in selector lever position R, N or M/S.

**Starting the engine**

The engine starts automatically under the following conditions:
- Manual transmission: clutch pedal is pressed.
- Steptronic transmission: by releasing the brake pedal.

After the engine starts, accelerate as usual.

**Safety mode**

After the engine switches off automatically, it will not start again automatically if any one of the following conditions are met:
- The driver's safety belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is open.
- The hood was unlocked.
Some indicator lights light up for a varied length of time.
The engine can only be started via the Start/Stop button.

**Functional limitations**
Even if driving off was not intended, the deactivated engine starts up automatically in the following situations:
- Excessive warming of the car's interior when the air conditioning is switched on.
- The steering wheel is turned.
- Steptronic transmission: change from selector lever position D to R, N or M/S.
- Steptronic transmission: change from selector lever position P to R, N, D or M/S.
- The vehicle begins rolling.
- Fogging of the windows when the automatic climate control is switched on.
- The vehicle battery charge is very low.
- Excessive cooling of the car's interior when the heating is switched on.
- Manual transmission: low brake vacuum pressure; this can occur, for instance if the brake pedal is depressed a number of times in succession.

**Switching the system on/off**

**Using the button**

Press button.

### LED comes on: auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.
The engine is started during an automatic engine stop.
The engine can only be stopped or started via the Start/Stop button.

### LED goes out: auto Start/Stop function is activated.

**Switching off the vehicle during an automatic engine stop**
During an automatic engine stop, the vehicle can be switched off permanently, for instance when leaving it.

**Steptronic transmission:**
1. Engage selector lever position P.
2. Press the Start/Stop button. The ignition is switched off. The Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.
3. Set the parking brake.

**Manual transmission:**
1. Press the Start/Stop button. The ignition is switched off. The Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.
2. Shift into first gear or reverse.
3. Set the parking brake.

Engine start as usual via Start/Stop button.

**Automatic deactivation**
In certain situations, the Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated automatically for safety reasons, for instance if no driver is detected.

**Malfunction**
The Auto Start/Stop function no longer switches off the engine automatically. A Check Control message is displayed. It is possible to continue driving. Have the system checked by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
PARKING BRAKE

Safety information

WARNING
An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:
▷ Set the parking brake.
▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Applying
The lever automatically engages after being pulled up.

The indicator light lights up red. The parking brake is set.
Lower light: indicator light in Canadian models

If for once use during driving is required, engage the parking brake slightly and hold the button down.

To prevent corrosion and one-sided brake action, lightly apply the parking brake periodically while coasting, if traffic conditions permit.

The brake lights will not light up if the parking brake is set.

Releasing
Raise lever slightly, press the button and guide the lever down.

TURN SIGNAL, HIGH BEAMS, HEADLIGHT FLASHER

Turn signal

Using turn signals

Press the lever past the resistance point.
Canada: the lever returns into its starting position after actuation. To switch off manually, slightly tap the lever to the resistance point.

Triple turn signal activation
Lightly tap the lever up or down.
The turn signal flashes three times.
The function can be activated or deactivated.
Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Triple turn signal"
The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

**Signaling briefly**
Press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

**Malfunction**
Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator light indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

**High beams, headlight flasher**
Push the lever forward or pull it backward.

▷ High beams on, arrow 1.
▷ High beams off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

**WASHER/WIPER SYSTEM**

**General information**
Do not use the wipers if the windshield is dry, as this may damage the wiper blades or cause them to become worn more quickly.

**Safety information**

⚠️ WARNING
If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

⚠️ NOTE
If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.

**Switching on**

Press the lever up until the desired position is reached.
▷ Resting position of the wipers, position 0.
▷ Intermittent operation or rain sensor, position 1.
▷ Normal wiper speed, position 2.
▷ Fast wiper speed, position 3.

When travel is interrupted with the wiper system switched on: when travel continues, the wipers resume at their previous speed.

**Switching off and brief wipe**

Press the lever down.
Switching off: press the lever down until it reaches its standard position.

Brief wipe: press the lever down from the standard position.
The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

**Interval mode or rain sensor**

**Concept**
The rain sensor automatically controls the time between wipes depending on the intensity of the rainfall.

**General information**
The sensor is located on the windshield, directly in front of the interior mirror. Without the rain sensor, the frequency of the wiper operation is preset.

**Safety information**

⚠️ **NOTE**
If the rain sensor is activated, the wipers can accidentally start moving in vehicle washes. There is a risk of damage to property. Deactivate the rain sensor in vehicle washes.

**Activating**

Press the lever up once from its standard position, arrow 1.
Wiping is started.
The LED in the wiper lever is illuminated.

**Deactivating**
Press the lever back into the standard position.

**Setting the frequency or sensitivity of the rain sensor**

Turn the thumbwheel to adjust the frequency or sensitivity of the rain sensor.
Up: short interval or high sensitivity of the rain sensor.
Down: long interval or low sensitivity of the rain sensor.

**Windshield washer system**

**Safety information**

⚠️ **WARNING**
The washer fluid can freeze onto the window at low temperatures and obstruct the view. There is a risk of an accident. Only use the washer systems, if the washer fluid cannot freeze. Use antifreeze, if needed.

⚠️ **NOTE**
When the washer fluid reservoir is empty, the wash pump cannot work as intended. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use the washer system when the washer fluid reservoir is empty.
Cleaning the windshield
Pull the lever.
The system sprays washer fluid on the windshield and activates the wipers briefly.

Windshield washer nozzles
The washer jets are automatically heated whenever the ignition is switched on.

Fold-away position of the wipers
Concept
The fold-out position enables the wipers to be folded away from the windshield.

General information
Helpful when changing the wiper blades or under frosty conditions, for instance.

Safety information
WARNING
If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

NOTE
If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.

Folding away the wipers
1. Switch the ignition on and off again.
2. Press and hold the wiper level down, until the wipers stop in a close to vertical position.
3. Fold the wipers all the way away from the windshield.

Folding down the wipers
After the wipers are folded back down, the wiper system must be reactivated.
1. Fold the wipers back down onto the windshield.
2. Switch on the ignition.
3. Push wiper lever down. Wipers return to their resting position and are ready again for operation.
CANADA: WIPER SYSTEM

General information
Do not use the wipers if the windshield is dry, as this may damage the wiper blades or cause them to become worn more quickly.

Safety information

⚠️ WARNING
If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

⚠️ NOTE
If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.

Switching on

Tap up the lever or press it past the resistance point.

▷ Normal wiper speed: tap up once.
▷ Fast wiper speed: tap up twice or tap once beyond the resistance point.

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

Switching off and brief wipe

Press the lever down.

▷ To switch off from fast wiper speed: press down twice.
▷ To switch off from normal wiper speed: press down once.
▷ Brief wipe: press down once.

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

Interval mode or rain sensor

Concept
The rain sensor automatically controls the time between wipes depending on the intensity of the rainfall.

General information
The sensor is located on the windshield, directly in front of the interior mirror. Without the rain sensor, the frequency of the wiper operation is preset.

Safety information

⚠️ NOTE
If the rain sensor is activated, the wipers can accidentally start moving in vehicle washes. There is a risk of damage to property. Deactivate the rain sensor in vehicle washes.
Activating/deactivating

Press the button on the wiper lever.
Wiping is started.
If the vehicle is equipped with a rain sensor: the LED in the wiper lever is illuminated.
If wipers are frozen to windshield, wiper operation is deactivated.
During trip interruption with the rain sensor switched on: if the trip is resumed within approx. 15 minutes, the rain sensor is automatically activated again.

Setting the frequency or sensitivity of the rain sensor

Turn the thumbwheel to adjust the frequency or sensitivity of the rain sensor.
Up: short interval or high sensitivity of the rain sensor.
Down: long interval or low sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Windshield washer system

Safety information

WARNING
The washer fluid can freeze onto the window at low temperatures and obstruct the view. There is a risk of an accident. Only use the washer systems, if the washer fluid cannot freeze. Use antifreeze, if needed.

NOTE
When the washer fluid reservoir is empty, the wash pump cannot work as intended. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use the washer system when the washer fluid reservoir is empty.

Cleaning the windshield

Pull the lever.
The system sprays washer fluid on the windshield and activates the wipers briefly.

Windshield washer nozzles
The washer jets are automatically heated whenever the ignition is switched on.

Fold-away position of the wipers

Concept
The fold-out position enables the wipers to be folded away from the windshield.
**General information**
Helpful when changing the wiper blades or under frosty conditions, for instance.

**Safety information**

⚠️ **WARNING**
If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

⚠️ **NOTE**
If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.

### Folding away the wipers
1. Switch the ignition on and off again.
2. Press the wiper lever up beyond the point of resistance and hold it for approx. 3 seconds, until the wipers remain in a nearly vertical position.
3. Fold the wipers all the way away from the windshield.

### Folding down the wipers
After the wipers are folded back down, the wiper system must be reactivated.
1. Fold the wipers back down onto the windshield.
2. Switch on the ignition.
3. Push wiper lever down. Wipers return to their resting position and are ready again for operation.

**WASHER FLUID**

**General information**
All washer nozzles are supplied from one reservoir.

Use a mixture of tap water and windshield washer concentrate. If desired, a windshield washer concentrate containing antifreeze can be used.

Recommended minimum fill quantity: 0.2 US gal/1 liter.

**Safety information**

⚠️ **WARNING**
Some antifreeze agents can contain harmful substances and are flammable. There is a risk of fire and a risk of injury. Follow the instructions on the containers. Keep antifreeze away from ignition sources. Do not refill oper-
ating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.

United States: the washer fluid mixture ratio is regulated by the U.S. EPA and many individual states; do not exceed the allowable washer fluid dilution ratio limits that apply. Follow the usage instructions on the washer fluid container.

Use of BMW's Windshield Washer Concentrate or the equivalent is recommended. ◄

**WARNING**

Washer fluid can ignite and catch fire on contact with hot engine parts. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Only add washer fluid when the engine is cooled down. Next, fully close the lid of the washer fluid reservoir. ◄

**NOTE**

Silicon-containing additives in the washer fluid for the water-repelling effect on the windows can lead to damage to the washing system. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add silicon-containing additives to the washer fluid. ◄

**NOTE**

Mixing different windshield washer concentrates or antifreeze can damage the washing system. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not mix different windshield washer concentrates or antifreeze. Follow the information and mixing ratios provided on the containers. ◄

**Overview**

The washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment.

**Malfunction**

The use of undiluted windshield washer concentrate or alcohol-based antifreeze can lead to incorrect readings at temperatures below +5 °F/-15 °C.

**MANUAL TRANSMISSION**

**Safety information**

**WARNING**

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

▷ Set the parking brake.

▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.

▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock. ◄

**NOTE**

When shifting to a lower gear, excessive speeds can damage the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. When shifting into 5th
or 6th gear, press the gearshift lever to the right.

Schematic diagram

1 – 6: forward gears
R: reverse

Shifting

General information
Depending on the engine installation, the engine speed during a shifting operation is adjusted automatically as required for harmonious and dynamic gear shifting.

Reverse gear
Select only when the vehicle is stationary.
To overcome the resistance push the gearshift lever dynamically to the left and engage reverse gear with a forward shifting movement.

Rolling or pushing the vehicle
In some situations, the vehicle is to roll without its own power, for instance in a vehicle wash, or be pushed.
1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press on the clutch pedal and shift out of a forward gear or reverse.
3. Release the parking brake.

STEPTRONIC TRANSMISSION

Concept
The Steptronic transmission combines the functions of an automatic transmission with the possibility of manual shifting, if needed.

Safety information

WARNING
An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.
In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:
1. Set the parking brake.
2. On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
3. On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Selector lever version

General information
Depending on the vehicle equipment, a transmission with either a latching selector lever or a tap-operated selector lever is installed.

Transmission with a latching selector lever

The selector lever positions P, R, N, and D are selected by moving the selector lever into the
respective selector lever position. The selector lever engages in the selector lever positions.

Transmission with a tap-operated selector lever

The selector lever positions P, R, N, and D are selected by tapping the selector lever forward or back. The selector lever automatically returns to the center position when released.

Selector lever position P is engaged automatically, refer to page 86, in certain situations.

Selector lever positions

Drive mode D
Selector lever position for normal vehicle operation. All gears for forward travel are activated automatically.

Reverse R
Engage selector lever position R only when the vehicle is stationary.

Neutral N
The vehicle may be pushed or roll without engine power in selector lever position N, for instance in vehicle washes, refer to page 88.

Parking position P

General information
Selector lever position, for instance for parking the vehicle.

The transmission blocks the drive wheels in selector lever position P.

Engage selector lever position P only when the vehicle is stationary.

Before exiting the vehicle, make sure that selector lever position P is set. Otherwise, the vehicle may begin to move.

Automatic parking position for a transmission with a tap-operated selector lever

Selector lever position P is engaged automatically in situations such as the following:

▷ After the engine is switched off when the vehicle is in the radio-ready state, refer to page 73, or when the ignition is switched off, refer to page 72, while selector lever position R, D or M/S is engaged.

▷ If the driver’s safety belt is unbuckled, the driver’s door is opened, and the brake pedal is not pressed while the vehicle is stationary and selector lever position D, M/S or R is engaged.

▷ After the ignition has been switched off while selector lever position N is engaged.

Engaging selector lever positions: with a latching selector lever

General information
To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a drive mode, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start.

Functional requirements
The selector lever can only be taken out of selector lever position P if the ignition is on or the engine is running.

Engaging selector lever position D, N, R, or P

With the vehicle stationary, depress the brake pedal before shifting out of selector lever position P or N; otherwise, the shift block will not be
deactivated and the shift command will not be executed.

A selector lever lock prevents the following faulty operation:

▷ Unintentional shifting into selector lever position P or R.
▷ Unintentional shifting from selector lever position P into another selector lever position.

1. To release the selector lever lock: with the brake pedal depressed, press the button on the front of the selector lever.

2. Move the selector lever into the desired position.

**Functional requirements**

Only when the brake pedal is depressed is it possible to change from selector lever position P to another selector lever position. Depending on the transmission version, the engine may have to be running too.

**Engaging selector lever position D, N, R**

A selector lever lock prevents the following faulty operation:

▷ Unintentional shifting into selector lever position R.
▷ Unintentional shifting from selector lever position P into another selector lever position.

1. Press and hold the button to release the selector lever lock.

2. With the driver’s safety belt fastened, briefly push the selector lever in the desired direction, past a resistance point, if needed. The selector lever automatically returns to the center position when released.

**Engaging selector lever positions: with a tap-operated selector lever**

**General information**

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a drive mode, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start.
Engaging selector lever position P

Press button P.

Rolling or pushing the vehicle

General information
In some situations, the vehicle is to roll without its own power for a short distance, for instance in a vehicle wash, or be pushed.

Engaging selector lever position N: with a latching selector lever

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. If necessary, release the parking brake.
3. Depress the brake pedal.
4. Touch the selector lever lock and engage selector lever position N.
5. Release brake.

The vehicle may roll.

If there is a malfunction, you may not be able to change the selector lever position.

Manually unlock the transmission lock, if needed, refer to page 90.

Engaging selector lever position N: with a tap-operated selector lever

1. Start the engine while pressing on the brake pedal.
2. If necessary, release the parking brake.
3. Depress the brake pedal.
4. Touch the selector lever lock and engage selector lever position N.
5. Switch the engine off.

In this way, the ignition remains switched on, and a Check-Control message is displayed.

The vehicle may roll.

NOTE
Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when the ignition is switched off. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not switch drive-ready state off in vehicle washes.

Irrespective of the ignition, the selector lever position P is automatically engaged after approx. 15 minutes.
If there is a malfunction, you may not be able to change the selector lever position.
Electronically unlock the transmission lock, if needed, refer to page 91.

Kickdown
Kickdown is used to achieve maximum driving performance. Step on the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position.

Sport program M/S

Concept
The shifting points and shifting times in the Sport program are designed for a sportier driving style. The transmission, for instance shifts up later and the shifting times are shorter.
Activating the sport program

Press the selector lever to the left out of selector lever position D.
The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, for instance S1.
The sport program of the transmission is activated.

Ending the Sport program

Push the selector lever to the right.
D is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Manual mode M/S

Concept
Manual gear-shifting is possible in manual mode.

Activating manual mode

1. Press the selector lever to the left out of selector lever position D, arrow 1.

2. Push the selector lever forward or pull it backward, arrows 2.

Manual mode M/S becomes active and the gear is changed.
The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, for instance M1.

Shifting

➢ To shift down: press the selector lever forward.
➢ To shift up: pull the selector lever rearwards.

The Steptronic transmission continues shifting automatically in certain situations, for instance when certain engine speed limits are reached.
With a tap-operated selector lever: when M2 is set manually while the vehicle is stationary, the transmission will no longer shift back to M1. This shifting behavior is retained until you engage M1 manually or exit M.

Avoiding automatic upshifting

Once a particular engine speed is attained, M/S manual mode is automatically upshifted as needed.
MINI John Cooper Works: once particular engine speeds are attained, upshifting is not automatically performed in M/S manual mode.
For vehicles with Steptronic Sport transmission, automatic shift operations are not performed if one of the following conditions is met:
➢ DSC is deactivated.
➢ TRACTION is activated.
In addition, there is no downshifting for kickdown.
With the appropriate transmission version, the lowest possible gear can be selected by simultaneously activating kickdown and operating the left shift paddles. This is not possible by switching briefly via the shift paddles from selector lever position D to manual mode M/S.

Ending the manual mode

Push the selector lever to the right.
D is displayed in the instrument cluster.

**Shift paddles for Steptronic Sport transmission**

**Concept**
The shift paddles on the steering wheel allow you to shift gears quickly while keeping both hands on the steering wheel.

**General information**

**Shifting**
Gears will only be shifted at appropriate engine and road speeds, for instance downshifting is not possible if the engine speed is too high.

**Short-term manual mode**
In selector lever position D, actuating a shift paddle switches into manual mode temporarily. After conservative driving in manual mode without acceleration or shifting via the shift paddles for a certain amount of time, the transmission switches back to automatic mode.

It is possible to switch into automatic mode as follows:
- To shift up: briefly pull right shift paddle.
- To shift down: briefly pull left shift paddle.
- The lowest possible gear can be selected by pulling and holding the left shift paddle.

The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the current gear.

**Displays in the instrument cluster**
The selector lever position is displayed, for example P.

**Continuous manual mode**
In selector lever position S, actuating a shift paddle switches into manual mode permanently.

**Releasing the transmission lock manually: with a latching selector lever**
If the selector lever is locked in selector lever position P despite the ignition being switched on, the brake pedal being depressed and the button on the selector lever being pressed, the transmission lock can be unlocked manually:

Before unlocking the transmission lock manually, engage the parking brake forcefully to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

1. Loosen the selector lever sleeve, together with the lower retaining ring, from the cen-
ter console. To do so, pull the retaining ring upward at the rear edge.

2. Lift the sleeve. Unplug the cable connector, if needed.
3. Using the screwdriver from the onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 231, press the yellow release lever downward, see arrow.

4. Press the button on the front of the selector lever and move the selector lever back slightly.
   Release the release lever.
5. Bring the selector lever into the desired position.

For additional information, see the chapter on tow-starting and towing.

Releasing the transmission lock electronically: with a tap-operated selector lever

General information
Electronically unlock the transmission lock to maneuver vehicle from a danger area.

Before unlocking the transmission lock, set the parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Engaging selector lever position N
Unlocking is possible, if the starter can spin the engine.

1. Press and hold down brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button. The starter must audibly start.
3. Press the button on the selector lever, arrow 1, and press and hold the selector lever into selector lever position N, arrow N, until selector lever position N is displayed in the instrument cluster.
   A Check Control message is displayed.
4. Release the selector lever.
5. Release brake, as soon as the starter stops.
6. Maneuver the vehicle from the danger area and secure it against moving on its own.

For additional information, see the chapter on tow-starting and towing.

Steptronic Sport transmission: Launch Control

Concept
Launch Control enables optimum acceleration on surfaces with good traction under dry surrounding conditions.
General information
The use of Launch Control causes premature component wear since this function represents a very heavy load for the vehicle.
Do not use Launch Control during the break-in, refer to page 184, period.
To start with Launch Control do not steer the steering wheel.

Functional requirements
Launch Control is available as soon as the engine and transmission are at operating temperature.
The engine is at operating temperature after an uninterrupted trip of at least 6 miles/10 km.
Depending on the external temperature and driving style, the transmission requires an uninterrupted trip of up to 30 miles/50 km in order to reach the operating temperature required for Launch Control.

Start with launch control
While the engine is running:

1. Press button and select SPORT with the MINI Driving Modes switch.
   The instrument cluster displays TRACTION in combination with SPORT. The DSC OFF indicator light lights up.
2. Engage selector lever position S.
3. With the left foot, forcefully press down on the brake.
4. Step on the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position, kickdown.
   A flag symbol is displayed in the instrument cluster.
5. The starting engine speed adjusts. Within 3 seconds, release the brake.

Repeated use during a trip
After Launch Control has been used, the transmission must cool down for approx. 5 minutes before Launch Control can be used again.

After using Launch Control
To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC Dynamic Stability Control again.

System limits
An experienced driver may be able to achieve better acceleration values in DSC OFF mode.
Displays

Vehicle Features and Options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Instrument Cluster

Overview

1 Tachometer  98
2 Indicator/warning lights
3 Speedometer
4 Fuel gauge  98
5 Display/reset miles  98
6 Electronic displays  94
Electronic displays

1 Driver assistance systems
   Messages, for instance Check Control
   Time 98
   External temperature 98
   Selection lists 102

2 Total miles/trip odometer 98
   Onboard Computer 102
   Selector lever position 85
   Gear shift indicator 100
   MINI Driving Modes switch status 139

CHECK CONTROL

Concept
The Check Control system monitors functions in the vehicle and notifies you of malfunctions in the monitored systems.

General information
A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lights and SMS text messages in the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display.

In addition, an acoustic signal may be output and a SMS text message may appear on the Control Display.

Indicator/warning lights

General information
The indicator/warning lights can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.
Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when the engine is started or the ignition is switched on.

Red lights

Safety belt reminder
Indicator light flashes or is illuminated: safety belt on the driver or passenger side is not buckled. The safety belt reminder can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.
Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly.

**Airbag system**

Airbag system and belt tensioner are not working.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

**Parking brake**

The parking brake is set.

Release the parking brake, refer to page 77.

**Approach control warning**

Indicator light illuminates: advance warning is issued, for example when there is the impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

Increase distance.

Indicator light flashes: acute warning of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another vehicle at a relatively high differential speed.

Intervention by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

**Person warning**

If a collision with a person detected in this way is imminent, the symbol lights up and a signal sounds.

**Orange lights**

**Active Cruise Control**

The number bars shows the selected distance from the vehicle driving ahead.

Camera-based cruise control, refer to page 142.

**Vehicle detection, Active Cruise Control**

Indicator light illuminates: a vehicle has been detected ahead of you.

Indicator light flashes: the conditions are not adequate for the system to work.

The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.

**Yellow lights**

**Anti-lock Braking System ABS**

Braking force boost may not be working. Avoid abrupt braking. Take the longer braking distance into account.

Have the system immediately checked by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

**DSC Dynamic Stability Control**

The indicator light flashes: DSC controls the drive and braking forces. The vehicle is stabilized. Reduce speed and modify your driving style to the driving circumstances.

The indicator light lights up: DSC has malfunctioned.

Have the system checked by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

DSC, refer to page 137.
DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated or DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated

DSC is deactivated or DTC is activated.
DSC, refer to page 137, and DTC, refer to page 138.

Flat Tire Monitor FTM

The Flat Tire Monitor signals a loss of tire inflation pressure in a tire.
Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 126.

Tire Pressure Monitor TPM

The indicator light lights up: the Tire Pressure Monitor reports a low tire inflation pressure or a flat tire. Follow the information in the Check Control message.
The indicator light flashes and then continuously lights up: no flat tire or loss of tire inflation pressure can be detected.

- Interference caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- TPM was unable to complete the reset. Reset the system again.
- A wheel without TPM electronics is mounted: have it checked by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop as needed.
- Malfunction: have the system checked by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 121.

Steering system

Steering system in some cases not working.

Have the system checked by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Emissions

- The warning light lights up:
  Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.
- The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:
  This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.
  Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

Socket for Onboard Diagnosis, refer to page 230.

Rear fog light

Rear fog light is switched on.
Rear fog light, refer to page 114.

Green lights

Turn signal

Turn signal switched on.
Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator light indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.
Turn signal, refer to page 77.

Parking lights, headlight

Parking lights or headlights are switched on.
Parking lights/low beams, headlight control, refer to page 111.
Front fog lights

Front fog lights are switched on.
Front fog lights, refer to page 114.

High-beam Assistant

High-beam Assistant is switched on.
High beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the traffic situation.
High-beam Assistant, refer to page 113.

Cruise control

The system is switched on. It maintains the speed that was set using the control elements on the steering wheel.

Blue lights

High beams

High beams are switched on.
High beams, refer to page 78.

Hiding Check Control messages

Press and hold button on signal lever.

The messages can be hidden for approx. 8 seconds. After this time, they are displayed again automatically.

Temporary display

Some Check Control messages are hidden automatically after approx. 20 seconds. The Check Control messages are stored and can be displayed again later.

Displaying stored Check Control messages

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Check Control"
4. Select the SMS text message.

Display

Check Control

At least one Check Control message is displayed or is stored.

SMS text messages

SMS text messages in combination with a symbol in the instrument cluster explain a Check Control message and the meaning of the indicator/warning lights.

Supplementary SMS text messages

Additional information, such as on the cause of an error or the required action, can be called up via Check Control.

With urgent messages the added text will be automatically displayed on the Control Display.

Symbols

Within the supplementary text, the following functions can be selected independent of the check control message.
- Display additional information about the Check Control message in the Integrated Owner’s Manual.
- "Service request"
  Contact a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- "Roadside Assistance"
  Contact Roadside Assistance.

Messages after trip completion
Special messages displayed while driving are displayed again after the ignition is switched off.

FUEL GAUGE
The arrow beside the fuel pump symbol shows which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is on. Vehicle tilt position may cause the display to vary.

Information on refueling, refer to page 198.

The yellow indicator light illuminates, once the fuel reserve is reached.

TACHOMETER
Always avoid engine speeds in the red warning field. In this range, the fuel supply is reduced to protect the engine.

ODOMETER AND TRIP ODOMETER
Concept
The total number of kilometers driven and the number of kilometers driven since the last reset are displayed in the instrument cluster.

Reset the trip odometer
Press the button.
- The odometer is displayed when the ignition is switched off.
- When the ignition is switched on, the trip odometer is reset.

EXTERNAL TEMPERATURE
General information
If the indicator drops to +37 °F/+3 °C, a signal sounds.
A Check Control message is displayed.
There is an increased risk of ice on roads.

Safety information
WARNING
Even at temperatures above +37 °F/+3 °C there can be a risk of icy roads, for instance on bridges or shady sections of road. There is a risk of an accident. Modify your driving style to the weather conditions at low temperatures.

Display
The external temperature is displayed in the instrument cluster.

TIME
The time is displayed in the instrument cluster.
The time can be set via the Central Information Display (CID).

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983394 - X/17
DATE

The date is displayed in the instrument cluster.
The date can be set via the Central Information Display (CID).

RANGE

Safety information

NOTE
With a driving range of less than 30 miles/50 km the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of damage to property. Refuel promptly.

Display

With a low remaining range:
▷ A Check Control message is displayed briefly.
▷ The remaining range is shown on the Onboard Computer.
▷ With a dynamic driving style, for instance taking curves aggressively, the engine function is not always ensured.

The Check Control message appears continuously below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km.

Displaying the cruising range
Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. "Settings"
2. "Instrument cluster"
3. "Range"

CURRENT FUEL CONSUMPTION

Concept
Displays the current fuel consumption. Check whether you are currently driving in an efficient and environmentally-friendly manner.

Displaying the current fuel consumption
Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. "Settings"
2. "Instrument cluster"
3. "Current consumption"

SERVICE REQUIREMENTS

Concept
The function displays the service requirements and the corresponding maintenance scopes.

General information
After the ignition is switched on the instrument cluster briefly displays available driving distance or time to the next scheduled maintenance.
A service advisor can read out the current service requirements from your remote control.

Display

Detailed information on service requirements
More information on the type of service required may be displayed on the Control Display.
Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service required"
Required maintenance procedures and legally mandated inspections are displayed.

4. Select an entry to call up detailed information.

**Symbols**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbols</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="OK" /></td>
<td>No service is currently required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="三角" /></td>
<td>The deadline for scheduled maintenance or a legally mandated inspection is approaching.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="警报" /></td>
<td>The service deadline has already passed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Entering appointment dates**

Enter the dates for the mandatory vehicle inspections.

Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service required"
4. "§ Vehicle inspection"
5. "Date:"
6. Adjust the settings.
7. Confirm.
   The entered date is stored.

**General information**

Depending on the vehicle's features and country-specific version, the gear shift indicator is active in the manual mode of the Steptronic transmission and with manual transmission.

Suggestions to shift gear up or down are displayed in the instrument cluster.

**Manual transmission: displaying**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="3" /></td>
<td>Fuel efficient gear is set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="3&gt;4" /></td>
<td>Shift into fuel efficient gear.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Steptronic transmission: displaying**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="M3" /></td>
<td>Fuel efficient gear is set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="3&gt;4" /></td>
<td>Shift into fuel efficient gear.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SPEED LIMIT INFO**

**Speed Limit Info**

**Concept**

Speed Limit Info shows the current maximum permitted speed in the instrument cluster.

**General information**

The camera at the base of the interior mirror detects traffic signs at the edge of the road as well as variable overhead sign posts. Traffic signs with extra symbols for wet road conditions, etc., are also detected and compared with the vehicle's onboard data, such as from...
the rain sensor, and will be displayed depending on the situation.

With the navigation system, the system takes into account the information stored in the navigation data and also displays speed limits present on routes without signs.

Without a navigation system, the system is subject to limitations imposed by technology. Traffic signs with speed limitations are detected and displayed only. Speed limitations due to entering or exiting towns, highway signs, etc. are not displayed. Speed limits with extra text characters are always displayed.

Safety information

WARNING
The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Camera

The camera is installed near the interior mirror. Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Display

Speed Limit Info is displayed via the Onboard Computer.

Press button on the turn signal lever several times, if needed.

Speed Limit Info is displayed on the Info Display in the instrument cluster.

Speed Limit Info

The last speed limit detected.

Without a navigation system the traffic signals are grayed out after curves or longer stretches of roadway.

With navigation system: Speed Limit Info is not available.

Without navigation system: no speed limit or cancellation is detected.

Speed Limit Info can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

System limits

The system may not be fully functional and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

▷ In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
▷ When signs are fully or partially concealed by objects, stickers or paint.
When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.

When driving toward bright lights or strong reflections.

When the windshield in front of the interior mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered by a sticker, etc.

In the event of incorrect detection by the camera.

If the speed limits stored in the navigation system are incorrect.

In areas not covered by the navigation system.

When roads differ from the navigation, such as due to changes in road routing.

When passing buses or trucks with a speed sticker.

If the traffic signs are non-conforming.

During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

When signs that are valid for a parallel road are detected.

### Selection Lists

#### General Information
With the buttons on the steering wheel and the display in the instrument cluster the following can be displayed or operated:

- Current audio source.
- Redial phone feature.
- Turn on voice activation system.

### Activating a List and Adjusting the Setting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Button on the steering wheel</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Move selection up.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move selection down.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confirm the selection.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Display

#### Onboard Computer

#### Concept
The Onboard Computer displays different vehicle data in the instrument cluster, such as average values.

#### Calling up Information on the Info Display

Press and hold button on signal lever.
Information is displayed in the Info Display of the instrument cluster.

Information at a glance

Info Display

Repeatedly pressing the button on the turn signal lever calls up the following information in the Info Display:

▷ Range.

▷ GREEN Info.

When GREEN Mode is activated.

▷ Average consumption, fuel.

▷ Current consumption, fuel.

▷ Average speed.

▷ Date.

▷ Engine temperature display.

▷ Always Open Timer.

▷ With equipment version with Head-up Display and navigation:

  Distance to destination.

  When destination guidance is activated in the navigation system.

▷ With equipment version with Head-up Display and navigation:

  Time of arrival.

  When destination guidance is activated in the navigation system.

▷ Speed Limit Info.

▷ Speed.

The unit of some information can be changed. Setting units, refer to page 107.

Selecting information

You can select what information from the Onboard Computer is to be displayed on the Info Display of the instrument cluster.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. ☰ "Settings"
2. "Instrument cluster"
3. Select the desired information.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Information in detail

Range

Displays the estimated cruising range available with the remaining fuel.

The range is calculated based on your driving style over the last 20 miles/30 km.

GREEN info

The achieved range extension may be displayed as a bonus range.

Average fuel consumption

This is calculated for the period while the engine is running.

The average fuel consumption is calculated for the distance traveled since the last reset by the Onboard Computer.

Average speed

Periods in which the vehicle is parked with the engine manually stopped are not included in the calculation of the average speed.

Resetting average values

Press and hold button on turn signal lever.
Engine temperature display
Displays the current engine temperature, based on a combination of coolant and engine oil temperature. As soon as the optimum operating temperature has been attained, the indicator is in the center position.

If the engine oil or coolant, and thus the engine, become too hot, a Check Control message is displayed too.

When the engine temperature is too high, a red indicator light is displayed.

When the engine oil temperature is too high, a red indicator light is displayed.

Check the coolant level, refer to page 227.

Always Open Timer
The Always Open Timer displays the current driving time and total driving time with the convertible top open in minutes and hours.

Always Open Timer via the Central Information Display (CID), refer to page 110.

Reset the Always Open Timer
Reset the current driving time: press button on the turn signal lever for approx. 2 seconds with the driving times displayed.

With equipment version with Head-up Display and navigation: distance to destination
The distance remaining to the destination is displayed if a destination is entered in the navigation system before the trip is started.
The distance to the destination is adopted automatically.

With equipment version with Head-up Display and navigation: time of arrival
The estimated time of arrival is displayed if a destination is entered in the navigation system before the trip is started.
The time must be correctly set.

Speed Limit Info
Speed Limit Info shows the current maximum permitted speed in the instrument cluster.

Onboard Computer on the Control Display

Concept
The Onboard Computer displays different vehicle data on the Control Display, such as average values.

General information
The vehicle features two types of Onboard Computers.

- "Onboard info": average values, such as the fuel consumption, are displayed. The values can be reset individually.
- "Trip computer": the values deliver an overview of a certain distance and can be reset as often as necessary.

Calling up the Onboard Computer or trip computer
Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. 🚗 "Vehicle info"
2. "Onboard info" or "Trip computer"
Resetting the Onboard Computer
Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Onboard info"
3. "Consumpt." or "Speed"
4. "Yes"

Resetting the trip computer
Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Trip computer"
3. "Reset": all values are reset.
   "Automatically reset": all values are reset approx. 4 hours after the vehicle has come to a standstill.

DRIVING EXCITEMENT

Concept
On the Control Display, sport instruments can be displayed, and the vehicle state can be checked before the use of the SPORT program.

Sport instruments

General information
On the Control Display, values for power and torque are displayed.

Displaying sport instruments
Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Driving Excitement"
3. "Sports instruments"
Via MINI Driving Modes switch:
1. Activate SPORT.
2. "Driving Excitement"
3. "Vehicle and surroundings"

Vehicle state
The following vehicle and surrounding area data is automatically checked and evaluated in succession:
- Range.
- Engine temperature.
- External temperature.
- SPORT program state.
Finally, a total evaluation of the vehicle state is displayed.

Checking vehicle state
Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Driving Excitement"
3. "Vehicle and surroundings"
Via MINI Driving Modes switch:
1. Activate SPORT.
2. "Driving Excitement"
3. "Vehicle and surroundings"

SPEED WARNING

Concept
A speed limit can be set that when reached will cause a warning to be issued.

General information
The warning is repeated if the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed limit again, after it has dropped below it by 3 mph/5 km/h.

Displaying, setting or changing the speed warning
Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Warning at:"
4. Turn the Controller until the desired speed warning is displayed.
5. Press the Controller.

Activating/deactivating the speed warning
Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Warning"
4. Press the Controller.

Setting your current speed as the speed warning
Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Select current speed"
4. Press the Controller.

SETTINGS ON THE CONTROL DISPLAY

Time

Setting the time
1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Time:"
4. Turn the Controller until the desired hours are displayed.
5. Press the Controller.
6. Turn the Controller until the desired minutes are displayed.
7. Press the Controller.
The time is stored.

Setting the time format
1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"
4. Select the desired format.
The time format is stored.

Date

Setting the date
1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Date:"
4. Turn the Controller until the desired day is displayed.
5. Press the Controller.
6. Make the settings for the month and year.
The date is stored.

Setting the date format
1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"
4. Select the desired format.
The date format is stored.

Language

Setting the language
1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Language:"
4. Select the desired language.
Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Setting the voice dialog
Voice dialog for the voice activation system, refer to page 29.
Units of measurement

Setting the units of measurement
To set the units for fuel consumption, route/distance and temperature:
1. Go "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. Select the desired menu item.
4. Select the desired unit.
Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Brightness

Setting the brightness
To set the brightness of the Control Display:
1. Go "Settings"
2. "Control display"
3. "Brightness at night"
4. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is set.
5. Press the Controller.
Settings are stored for the profile currently used.
Depending on the light conditions, the brightness settings may not be clearly visible.

LED RING ON THE CENTRAL INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

Concept
The LED ring displays light animations to represent specific functions.

Basic displays
Basic functions, for instance the tachometer, can be set to be displayed continually if so desired.

Event displays
Functions that are only displayed temporarily, for instance the volume or temperature settings, can be set as event displays.
Several vehicle assistance functions can also be displayed on the LED ring. This display corresponds with the displays of the function in the respective display.

Example: tachometer
Like the tachometer in the instrument cluster, the light animations of the tachometer’s basic display show the current RPMs and the respective RPM warning thresholds.

Display

Switching on/off LED ring
Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. Go "Settings"
2. "Center Instrument"

Adjusting the LED ring
Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. Go "Settings"
2. "Center Instrument"
3. "Basic display" or "Event display"
4. Select the desired setting.
Setting the brightness
The brightness can be adjusted when night lighting is active in the instrument cluster.
Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. "Settings"
2. "Center Instrument"
3. "Brightness at night"
4. Turn the Controller.
Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

HEAD-UP DISPLAY

Concept
This system projects important information into the driver's field of vision, for instance the speed.
The driver can get information without averting his or her eyes from the road.

General information
Follow the instructions for cleaning the Head-up Display. For additional information, see the chapter on care.

Safety information

WARNING
When extending and retracting the projection screen of the Head-up Display, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the projection screen is clear during opening and closing.

NOTE
The Head-up Display consists of sensitive components that can easily be scraped or damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not place any objects on the Head-up Display, attach to system components or plug into the system. Do not move the moving parts manually.

Overview

Switching the Head-up Display on/off
When switching on, the projection lens of the Head-up Display is extended. When switching off, the projection lens of the Head-up Display is retracted again.
Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Head-Up Display"

Display

Overview
The following information is displayed on the Head-up Display:
▷ Speed.
▷ Navigation system.
▷ Check Control messages.
▷ Selection list from the instrument cluster.
▷ Driver assistance systems.
Some of this information is only displayed briefly as needed.
Selecting displays in the Head-up Display
Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Displayed information"
4. Select the desired displays in the Head-up Display.
Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Setting the brightness
The brightness is automatically adjusted to the ambient brightness.
The basic setting can be adjusted manually.
Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Brightness"
4. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is set.
5. Press the Controller.
When the low beams are switched on, the brightness of the Head-up Display can be additionally influenced using the instrument lighting, refer to page 115.
Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Adjusting the height
Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Height"
4. Turn the Controller until the desired height is reached.
5. Press the Controller.
Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Setting the rotation
The screen of the Head-up Display can be rotated around its own axis.
Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Rotation"
4. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is selected.
5. Press the Controller.
Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Display visibility
The visibility of the displays in the Head-up Display is influenced by the following factors:
▷ Certain sitting positions.
▷ Objects on the cover of the Head-up Display.
▷ Sunglasses with certain polarization filters.
▷ Wet roads.
▷ Unfavorable light conditions.

John Cooper Works: sport displays in the Head-up Display

General information
The sport displays in the Head-up Display assist with a sporty driving style.

Switching on
Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Height"
4. "Display information"
5. "Sport displays"
With navigation system: if the sport displays are switched on, no navigation content will be displayed on the Head-up Display.
Display

1. Speed
2. Shift point indicator
3. Gear display
4. Current engine speed
5. Warning field, speed

Shift point indicator

Concept
Shift point indicator in the Head-up Display indicates the optimum shifting point. Thus, with a sporty driving style, the best possible vehicle acceleration is achieved.

Functional requirements
- Steptronic Sport transmission: Manual mode M/S and, if necessary, Dynamic Traction Control DTC are activated.
- Press the accelerator pedal all the way down.

Display
Successive gray illuminated fields indicate the upcoming shift moment.
Shift up immediately when the red fields light up.
When the permitted maximum speed is reached, all shift point indicators flash.
When the maximum speed is exceeded, the supply of fuel is interrupted in order to protect the engine.

ALWAYS OPEN TIMER

Concept
The Always Open Timer displays the driving times with open convertible top on the Control Display and in the Onboard Computer, refer to page 102.

General information
With the respective equipment, the Always Open Timer can also be displayed as light animation on the LED ring of the central instrument cluster.

Displaying the Always Open Timer
1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Always Open"

Display
The following information is displayed on the Control Display:
- Current driving time with the convertible top open in minutes and hours.
- Total driving time with the convertible top open in minutes and hours.
- Current external temperature while driving with the convertible top open.

Maximum 99 hours and 59 minutes are displayed for the current driving time, and maximum 999 hours and 59 minutes for the total driving time.

Reset the current driving time
1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Always Open"
3. "Reset trip"

To reset the total driving time, contact your service center.
VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

OVERVIEW

Switches in the vehicle

The light switch element is located next to the steering wheel.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Rear fog light" /></td>
<td>Rear fog light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Front fog lights" /></td>
<td>Front fog lights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Automatic headlight control" /></td>
<td>Automatic headlight control</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PARKING LIGHTS, LOW BEAMS AND ROADSIDE PARKING LIGHTS

General information
Position of switch: 0, D, A

If the driver’s door is opened when the ignition is switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off.

Parking lights

Position of switch: D

The vehicle is illuminated on all sides.

Do not use the parking lights for extended periods; otherwise, the battery may become discharged and it would then be impossible to start the engine.

When parking, switch on the one-sided roadside parking light, refer to page 112.

Low beams

Position of switch: D

The low beams light up when the ignition is switched on.
Canada: roadside parking light

Concept
The vehicle can be illuminated on one side.

Switching on
With radio-ready state switched off, press the lever either up or down past the resistance point for approx. 2 seconds.

Switching off
Briefly press the lever to the resistance point in the opposite direction.

Welcome lights and headlight courtesy delay feature

Welcome lights

General information
Depending on the vehicle equipment and the ambient brightness, individual light functions may be switched on briefly when the vehicle is unlocked.

Activating/deactivating
Position of switch: ☘️, ☕️
Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. ☘️ "Settings"
2. "Lighting"

Headlight courtesy delay feature

General information
The low beams stay lit for a short while if the headlight flasher is switched on after the vehicle's radio-ready state is switched off.

Setting the duration
Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. ☘️ "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Pathway lighting:"
4. Set length of time.

Automatic headlight control

Concept
The low beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness, for instance in tunnels, in twilight or if there is precipitation.

General information
A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be switched on.

Activating
Position of switch: ☘️
The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low beams are switched on.
System limits
The automatic headlight control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment of lighting conditions.
For example, the sensors are unable to detect fog or hazy weather. To avoid safety risks under these conditions, you should always switch on the lights manually.

DAYTIME RUNNING LIGHTS

General information
Position of switch: 开启了

The daytime running lights light up when the ignition is switched on. After the ignition is switched off, the parking lights light up in position.

Activating/deactivating
In some countries, daytime running lights are mandatory, so it may not be possible to deactivate the daytime running lights.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Daytime running lamps"

Settings are stored for the remote control currently used.

CORNERING LIGHT

General information
Position of switch: 侧向照明

In tight curves, for instance on mountainous roads or when turning, an additional, cornering light is switched on that lights up the inside of the curve when the vehicle is moving below a certain speed.

The cornering light is automatically switched on depending on the steering angle or the use of turn signals.

ADAPTIVE HEADLIGHT RANGE CONTROL

The adaptive headlight range control compensates for acceleration and braking operations in order not to blind the oncoming traffic and to achieve optimum illumination of the roadway.

HIGH-BEAM ASSISTANT

Concept
The high-beam Assistant detects other traffic participants early on and automatically switches the high beams on or off depending on the traffic situation.

General information
The assistant ensures that the high beams are switched on, whenever the traffic situation allows. In the low speed range, the high beams are not switched on by the system.
The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to adequate illumination, for instance in towns and cities.
The high beams can be switched on and off at any time as usual.
Activating/deactivating

Position of switch, depending on the vehicle equipment: 🚦, 🚨
Press and hold button on signal lever.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low beams are switched on.

The headlights are automatically switched between low beams and high beams.

The blue indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up when the system switches on the high beams.

The high-beam Assistant is deactivated when manually switching the high beams on and off, refer to page 78.

To reactivate the high-beam Assistant, press the button on the turn signal lever.

System limits
The high-beam Assistant cannot serve as a substitute for the driver’s personal judgment of when to use the high beams. In situation that require this, therefore switch off manually.

The system is not fully functional in the following situations, and driver intervention may be necessary:

▷ In very unfavorable weather conditions, such as fog or heavy precipitation.
▷ When detecting poorly-lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; and at animal crossings.

▷ In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in cross traffic or half-obscured oncoming traffic on highways.
▷ In poorly-lit towns and cities and in the presence of highly reflective signs.
▷ When the windshield in front of the interior mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

FOG LIGHTS

Front fog lights

Concept
The front fog lights work alongside the low beams to illuminate a wider area of the roadway.

Functional requirement
The low beams must be switched on before switching on the front fog lights.

Switching on/off
Press button.
The green indicator light lights up if the front fog lights are switched on.

If the automatic headlight control, refer to page 112, is activated, the low beams will come on automatically when you switch on the front fog lights.

When the high beams or headlight flasher are activated, the front fog lights are not switched on.

Rear fog light

Functional requirement
The low beams or the front fog lights must be switched on before switching on the rear fog light.
Switching on/off

Press button. The yellow indicator light lights up when the rear fog light is switched on.

If the automatic headlight control, refer to page 112, is activated, the low beams will come on automatically when you switch on the rear fog light.

INSTRUMENT LIGHTING

Functional requirement
The parking lights or low beams must be switched on to adjust the brightness.

Settings
Adjust the brightness with the thumbwheel.

INTERIOR LIGHTS

General information
Depending on the equipment, the interior lights, footwell lights, entry lights, and courtesy lights are controlled automatically. Thumbwheel for the instrument lighting controls brightness of some of these features.

Overview

1. Interior lights
2. Reading lights
3. Ambient light

Switching the interior lights on/off

Press button. To switch off permanently: press the button and hold for approx. 3 seconds.

Switching the reading lights on and off manually

Press button. The reading lights are located in the front next to the interior light.

Ambient light

General information
Depending on the equipment version, lighting can be adjusted for some lights in the car's interior.

Activating/deactivating

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Ambient:"
The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.
Changing color

Push the switch forward or back:
manual color change.

Press the switch forward or backward and hold for approx. 3 seconds, until the ambient light illuminates several times: automatic color change. Push the switch again to end color changes.

Setting the brightness

Depending on the equipment, the brightness of the ambient light can be adjusted via the thumbwheel for the instrument lighting or on the Control Display.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Brightness:"
4. Adjust the brightness.
SAFETY

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

AIRBAGS

Front airbags help protect the driver and the front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone would not provide adequate protection.

Front airbag, driver
Front airbag, front passenger

Side airbag
In a lateral impact, the side airbag supports the side of the body in the chest, lap, and head area.

Knee airbag
The knee airbag supports the legs in a frontal impact.
Protective action
Airbags are not triggered in every impact situation, for instance in less severe accidents or rear-end collisions.

Information on optimum effect of the airbags

WARNING
If the seat position is incorrect or the deployment area of the airbags is impaired, the airbag system cannot provide protection as intended and may cause additional injuries due to triggering. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Follow the information on achieving the optimum protective effect of the airbag system.

▷ Keep a distance from the airbags.
▷ Always grasp the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim. Hold your hands at the 3 o’clock and 9 o’clock positions, to keep the risk of injury to your hands or arms as low as possible when the airbag is triggered.
▷ Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e., keeps his or her feet and legs in the floor area and does not support them on the dashboard.
▷ Make sure that occupants keep their heads away from the side airbag.
▷ There should be no additional persons, animals or objects between an airbag and a person.
▷ Dashboard and windshield on the front passenger side must stay clear - do not attach adhesive labels or coverings and do not attach brackets or cables, for instance for GPS devices or mobile phones.
▷ Do not apply adhesive materials to the airbag cover panels, do not cover them or modify them in any way.
▷ Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area.
▷ Do not place slip covers, seat cushions or other objects on the front passenger seat that are not specifically suited for seats with integrated side airbags.
▷ Do not place seat cushions or other objects on the front seats that are not specifically suited for seats with integrated side airbags.
▷ Do not hang pieces of clothing, such as jackets, over the backrests.
▷ Never modify either the individual components or the wiring in the airbag system. This also applies to steering wheel covers, the dashboard, and the seats.
▷ Do not remove the airbag system.

Even when you follow all instructions very closely, injury from contact with the airbags cannot be fully ruled out in certain situations. The ignition and inflation noise may lead to short-term and, in most cases, temporary hearing impairment in sensitive occupants. Vehicle modifications for a person with disabilities may affect the air bag system; contact MINI Customer Relations for further information. Warnings and information on the airbags are also found on the sun visors.

Functional readiness of the airbag system

Safety information

WARNING
Individual components can be hot after triggering of the airbag system. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch individual components.

WARNING
Improperly executed work can lead to failure, malfunction or unintentional triggering of the airbag system. In the case of a malfunction, the airbag system might not trigger as intended despite the accident severity. There is a
risk of injuries or danger to life. Have the airbag system checked, repaired, dismantled and scrapped by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Correct function

When the ignition is switched on, the warning light in the instrument cluster lights up briefly and thereby indicates the operational readiness of the entire airbag system and the belt tensioner.

Airbag system malfunctioning

▷ Warning light does not come on when the ignition is switched on.
▷ The warning light lights up continuously.

Automatic deactivation of the front-seat passenger airbags

Concept

The system reads if the front passenger seat is occupied by measuring the human body’s resistance.

Front, knee, and side airbag on the front passenger’s side are activated or deactivated.

General information

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, refer to the safety information and instructions for children on the front passenger seat, see Children.

Safety information

WARNING

To ensure the front-seat passenger airbag function, the system must be able to detect whether a person is sitting in the front passenger seat. The entire seat cushion area must be used for this purpose. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the front passenger keeps his or her feet in the floor area.

Malfunction of the automatic deactivation system

When transporting older children and adults, the front-seat passenger airbags may be deactivated in certain sitting positions. In this case, the indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up.

In this case, change the sitting position so that the front-seat passenger airbags are activated and the indicator light goes out.

If it is not possible to activate the airbags, have the person sit in the rear.

To enable correct recognition of the occupied seat cushion.

▷ Do not attach covers, cushions, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically determined to be safe for use on the front passenger seat.
▷ Do not place any electronic devices on the front passenger seat if a child restraint system is to be installed on it.
▷ Do not place objects under the seat that could press against the seat from below.
▷ No moisture in or on the seat.

Indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags

The indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags indicates the operating state of the front-seat passenger airbags. The light indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.
The indicator light lights up when a child is properly seated in a child restraint system or when the seat is empty. The airbags on the front passenger side are not activated.

The indicator light does not light up when, for instance a correctly seated person of sufficient size is detected on the seat. The airbags on the front passenger side are activated.

Detected child restraint systems
The system generally detects children seated in a child restraint system, particularly in child restraint systems required by NHTSA at the point in time when the vehicle was manufactured. After installing a child restraint system, make sure that the indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up. This indicates that the child restraint system has been detected and the front-seat passenger airbags are not activated.

Strength of the driver's and front-seat passenger airbag
The explosive power that activates driver's/front-seat passenger airbags very much depends on the positions of the driver's/front passenger seat.

To maintain the accuracy of this function over the long-term, calibrate the front seats as soon as a relevant Check Control message is displayed. A message also appears on the Control Display.

Calibrating the front seats

**WARNING**
There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

An appropriate Check Control message is displayed.

1. Move the respective seat all the way forward.
2. Move the respective seat forward again. The seat moves forward briefly.
3. Readjust the seat to the desired position. The calibration procedure is completed when the Check Control message disappears.

If the message continues to be displayed, repeat the calibration.

If the message does not disappear after a repeat calibration, have the system checked as soon as possible.

ROLLOVER PROTECTION SYSTEM

**Concept**
The rollover protection system is automatically activated in the event of a sufficiently serious accident or if the longitudinal axis is tilted excessively. The safety frames located behind the rear head restraints extend within fractions of a second.

Supplementing the reinforced windshield frame, the rollover protection system further increases passenger safety.

**General information**
Do not place any objects on the covers of the rollover protection system.

**Safety information**

**WARNING**
There can be damage or injuries when the rollover protection system is triggered. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the rollover protection system is clear.
WARNING
Improperly executed work can lead to failure, malfunction or unintentional triggering of the system. In the case of a malfunction, the system might not trigger as intended even if there is an accident severe enough to warrant it. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Have the system checked, repaired, dismantled and scrapped by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

WARNING
After triggering or damage, system functionality is limited or not available anymore. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Have the system checked and replaced by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop in the event of triggering of or damage to the system.

WARNING
With an extended rollover protection system, the area of movement of the convertible top is limited. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. When the rollover protection system is extended, do not move the convertible top.

Overview
Covers of the rollover protection system

Malfunction
A Check Control message is displayed when there is a malfunction.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITOR TPM

Concept
The system monitors tire inflation pressure in the four mounted tires. The system warns you if there is a significant loss of pressure in one or more tires.

General information
Sensors in the tire valves measure the tire inflation pressure and, depending on the model, the tire temperature.

With use of the system follow further information found under Tire inflation pressure, refer to page 202.

Functional requirements
The following conditions must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable flagging of a loss of tire inflation pressure is not assured:

▷ After a tire or wheel replacement, a reset was performed with the correct tire inflation pressure.
▷ After the tire inflation pressure was adjusted to a new value, a reset was performed.
▷ Wheels with TPM wheel electronics.

Status display

Current status
The system status can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the system is active.
Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor (TPM)"

The current status is displayed.

**Tire conditions**

**General information**

Tire and system status are indicated by the color of the wheels and a SMS text message on the Control Display.

**All wheels green**

System is active and will issue a warning related to the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

**One to four yellow wheels**

A flat tire or major drop in the tire inflation pressure has occurred in the indicated tires.

**Gray wheels**

It may not be possible to identify tire pressure losses.

Possible causes:

▷ Malfunction.

▷ The system is being reset.

**Additonal information**

The status control display additionally shows the current tire inflation pressures. It shows the actual values read; they may vary depending on driving style or weather conditions.

**Resetting the system**

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Perform reset"
4. Start the engine but do not drive off.

5. Reset the tire inflation pressure using "Perform reset".

6. Drive away.

The wheels are displayed in gray and the following is displayed "Resetting Tire Pressure Monitor (TPM)…".

After driving faster than 19 mph/30 km/h for a short period, the set tire inflation pressures are accepted as reference values. The resetting process is completed automatically while driving. After successful completion of the reset, the tires appear in green on the Control Display and "Tire Pressure Monitor (TPM) active" is displayed.

You may interrupt this trip at any time. When you continue the reset resumes automatically.

**Messages**

**General information**

A low tire inflation pressure may cause the DSC Dynamic Stability Control to be switched on.

**Safety information**

⚠️ WARNING

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. Run-flat tires can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of an accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires.

**If a tire inflation pressure check is required**

**Message**

A symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.
If there is a significant loss of tire inflation pressure

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the Control Display.

Symbol  Possible cause

There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with normal tires or run-flat tires.
   Run-flat tires, refer to page 210, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire's sidewall.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

Normal tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.
   To do this, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure gage of a flat tire kit.
   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been reset. In this case, perform the reset.
   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

   Measure

   1. Reduce your speed and drive moderately. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
   2. At the next opportunity, for instance gas station, check and correct the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, if necessary.
   3. Reset the system.
If identification of flat tire damage is not possible, please contact a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

2. Repair the flat tire, e.g., with a flat tire kit or by changing the wheel.

Use of sealant, for instance from the flat tire kit, may damage the TPM wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked and replaced at the next opportunity.

Run-flat tires

Safety information

WARNING

Your vehicle handles differently with a run-flat with no or low inflation pressure; for instance, your lane stability when braking is reduced, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of an accident.

Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h. ◄

Maximum speed

You may continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

Continued driving with a flat tire

If continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been reset. In this case, perform the reset.

Possible driving range with a depressurized tire

The possible driving range varies depending on how the vehicle is loaded and used, e.g., speed, road conditions, external temperature. The driving range may be less but may also be more if an economical driving style is used.

If the vehicle is loaded with an average weight and used under favorable conditions, its possible driving range will be up to 50 miles/80 km.

Vehicle handling with damaged tires

Vehicles driven with a damaged tire will handle differently, potentially leading to conditions such as the following:

▷ Greater likelihood of swerving off course.
▷ Longer braking distances.
▷ Changed self-steering properties.

Modify your driving style. Avoid abrupt steering maneuvers or driving over obstacles, for instance curbs or potholes.

Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire.

Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident.

Do not continue driving. Contact a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

System limits

Temperature

The tire inflation pressure depends on the tire's temperature.

Driving or exposure to the sun will increase the tire's temperature, thus increasing the tire inflation pressure.

The tire inflation pressure is reduced when the tire temperature falls again.
These circumstances may cause a warning when temperatures fall very sharply.

**Sudden tire pressure loss**
The system cannot indicate sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances.

**Failure to perform a reset**
The system does not function properly if a reset has not been carried out, for instance a flat tire is reported though tire inflation pressures are correct.

**Malfunction**
The yellow warning light flashes and is then illuminated continuously. A Check Control message is displayed. It may not be possible to identify tire pressure losses.

Examples and recommendations in the following situations:

- **A wheel without TPM wheel electronics, for instance an emergency wheel, is mounted:** have it checked by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop as needed.
- **Malfunction:** have system checked by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- **The system was unable to complete the reset.** Perform a system reset again.
- **Interference caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency:** after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.

**Declaration according to NHTSA/FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring System**
Each tire, including the spare (if provided) should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.) As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver’s responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.
FTM FLAT TIRE MONITOR

Concept
The system detects tire inflation pressure loss on the basis of rotation speed differences between the individual wheels while driving.

In the event of a tire inflation pressure loss, the diameter and therefore the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel changes. The difference will be detected and reported as a flat tire.

The system does not measure the actual inflation pressure in the tires.

Functional requirements
The following conditions must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable flagging of a loss of tire inflation pressure is not assured:

▷ After a tire or wheel replacement, an initialization was performed with the correct tire inflation pressure.

▷ After the tire inflation pressure was adjusted to a new value, an initialization was performed.

Status display
The current status of the flat tire monitor can be displayed, for instance whether the RPA is active.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tire Monitor (FTM)"

The status is displayed.

Initialization required
An initialization must be performed in the following situations:

▷ After the tire inflation pressure has been adjusted.

Performing initialization
When initializing, the set tire inflation pressures serve as reference values in order to detect a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the tire inflation pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with snow chains.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Perform reset"
4. Start the engine but do not drive off.
5. Start the initialization with: "Perform reset".
6. Drive away.

The initialization is completed while driving, which can be interrupted at any time.

The initialization automatically continues when driving resumes.

Messages

General information
When a flat tire is indicated, DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if needed.

Safety information

WARNING
A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. Run-flat tires can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of an accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires.

Indication of a flat tire
A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.
In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Possible cause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Symbol" /></td>
<td>There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Measure**

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with normal tires or run-flat tires.
   - Run-flat tires, refer to page 210, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire’s sidewall.

**Actions in the event of a flat tire**

**Normal tires**

1. Identify the damaged tire.
   - To do this, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure gage of a flat tire kit.
   - If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been reset. In this case, perform the reset.
   - If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.
   - If identification of flat tire damage is not possible, please contact a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
2. Repair the flat tire, e.g., with a flat tire kit or by changing the wheel.
   - Use of sealant, for instance from the flat tire kit, may damage the TPM wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked and replaced at the next opportunity.

**Run-flat tires**

**Safety information**

⚠️ **WARNING**

Your vehicle handles differently with a run-flat with no or low inflation pressure; for instance, your lane stability when braking is reduced, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of an accident.

Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h. ❯

**Maximum speed**

You may continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

**Continued driving with a flat tire**

If continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.
   - If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

**Possible driving range with a depressurized tire**

The possible driving range varies depending on the how the vehicle is loaded and used, e.g., speed, road conditions, external temperature. The driving range may be less but may also be more if an economical driving style is used.

If the vehicle is loaded with an average weight and used under favorable conditions, its possible driving range will be up to 50 miles/80 km.
Vehicle handling with damaged tires
Vehicles driven with a damaged tire will handle differently, potentially leading to conditions such as the following:
▷ Greater likelihood of swerving off course.
▷ Longer braking distances.
▷ Changed self-steering properties.
Modify your driving style. Avoid abrupt steering maneuvers or driving over obstacles, for instance curbs or potholes.

Final tire failure
Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire.
Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident.
Do not continue driving. Contact a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

System limits
The system could be delayed or malfunction in the following situations:
▷ A natural, even tire inflation pressure loss in all four tires will not be recognized. Therefore, check the tire inflation pressure regularly.
▷ Sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances cannot be recognized in advance.
▷ When the system has not been initialized.
▷ When driving on a snowy or slippery road surface.
▷ Sporty driving style: spinning traction wheels, high lateral acceleration (drifting).
▷ When driving with snow chains.

INTELLIGENT SAFETY

Concept
Intelligent Safety enables central operation of the driver assistance system.
The intelligent safety systems can help prevent an imminent collision.
▷ Approach control warning with City light braking function, refer to page 129.
▷ Person warning with City light braking function, refer to page 132.

Safety information

WARNING
The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING
Indicators and warnings do not relieve from personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late, incorrectly, or without justification. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING
Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.
Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety button

Switching on/off

Some Intelligent Safety systems are automatically active after every departure. Some Intelligent Safety systems activate according to the last setting.

Press button briefly:
- The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed. The systems are individually switched off according to their respective settings.
- LED lights up orange or goes out respective to their individual settings.

Adjust as needed. The individual settings are stored for the driver profile currently in use.

Press button again:
- All Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
- The LED lights up green.

Hold down button:
- All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.
- The LED goes out.

APPROACH CONTROL WARNING WITH CITY LIGHT BRAKING FUNCTION

Concept

The system can help prevent accidents. If an accident cannot be prevented, the system will help reduce the collision speed.

The system sounds a warning before an imminent collision and activates brakes independently, if needed.

The automatic braking intervention is done with limited force and duration.

A camera at the base of the interior mirror controls the system.

The approach control warning is available even if cruise control has been deactivated.

With the vehicle approaching another vehicle intentionally, the approach control warning and braking are delayed in order to avoid false system reactions.

General information

The system warns at two levels of an imminent danger of collision at speeds from approx. 3 mph/5 km/h. Time of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

Appropriate braking kicks in at speeds of up to 35 mph/60 km/h.
Detection range

Objects that the system can detect are taken into account.

Safety information

⚠️ WARNING
The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

⚠️ WARNING
Indicators and warnings do not relieve from personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late, incorrectly, or without justification. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

⚠️ WARNING
Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

The camera is installed near the interior mirror. Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Camera

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically
The system is automatically active after every driving off.

Switching on/off manually

Press button briefly:

- The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed. The systems are individually switched off according to their respective settings.
LED lights up orange or goes out respective to their individual settings. Adjust as needed. The individual settings are stored for the driver profile currently in use.

Press button again:
- All Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.

The LED lights up green.

Hold down button:
- All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

The LED goes out.

**Setting the warning time**

The warning time can be set via the Central Information Display (CID).

1. "Settings"
2. "Frontal Coll. Warning"
3. Activate the desired warning time on the Control Display.

The selected warning time is stored for the driver profile currently in use.

**Warning with braking function**

**Display**

A warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display if a collision with a detected vehicle is imminent.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Measure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| ![Symbol](image1) | Symbol lights up red: prewarning.  
Brake and increase distance. |
| ![Symbol](image2) | Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning.  
Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary. |

**Prewarning**

This warning is issued, for instance when there is the impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small. The driver must intervene actively when there is a prewarning.

**Acute warning with braking function**

Acute warning is displayed in case of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another object at a high differential speed. The driver must intervene actively when there is an acute warning. If necessary, the driver is assisted by a minor automatic braking intervention in a possible risk of collision. Acute warnings can also be triggered without previous forewarning.

**Braking intervention**

The warning prompts the driver to react. During a warning, the maximum braking force is used. Prerequisite for the brake booster is sufficiently quick and sufficiently hard stepping on the brake pedal. If there is a risk of collision, the system may assist with braking. When the vehicle is traveling at a low speed, the vehicle may come to a complete stop.

Manual transmission: during a braking intervention up to a complete stop, the engine may be shut down.

The braking intervention occurs only if vehicle stability has not been restricted, for instance by deactivating the DSC Dynamic Stability Control. The driver may cancel the braking intervention by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Object detection can be restricted. Follow the limitations of the detection range and functional restrictions.
System limits

Safety information

WARNING
The system can react not at all, too late, incorrectly, or without justification due to the system limits. There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Follow the information regarding the system limits and actively intervene, if needed.

Detection range
The system’s detection potential is limited. Thus, a system reaction might not come or might come late.
E.g., the following situations may not be detected:
▷ Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.
▷ Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or sharply decelerating vehicles.
▷ Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
▷ Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.

Functional limitations
The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:
▷ In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
▷ In tight curves.
▷ If the field of view of the camera or the windshield are dirty or covered.
▷ If the driving stability control systems are deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
▷ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
▷ If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.

Warning sensitivity
The more sensitive the warning settings are, the more warnings are displayed. Therefore, there may also be an excess of premature or unjustified warnings and reactions.

PERSON WARNING WITH CITY LIGHT BRAKING FUNCTION

Concept
The system can help prevent accidents with pedestrians.
When driving at city speeds, the system will issue a warning if there is imminent danger of a collision with pedestrians and includes a braking function.
The camera at the base of the interior mirror controls the system.

General information
With sufficient brightness, the system warns about possible collision danger with pedestrians starting at approx. 6 mph/10 km/h to approx. 35 mph/60 km/h and assists with braking before a collision.
The system reacts to people who are within the detection range of the system.

Detection range
The detection area in front of the vehicle is divided into two areas:
Central area, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.

Expanded area, arrow 2, to the right and left of the central area.

A collision is imminent if pedestrians are located within the central area. A warning is issued about pedestrians who are located within the extended area only if they are moving in the direction of the central area.

**Safety information**

**WARNING**

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

**WARNING**

Indicators and warnings do not relieve from personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late, incorrectly, or without justification. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

**WARNING**

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

---

### Overview

**Button in the vehicle**

![Intelligent Safety button](image)

**Camera**

The camera is installed near the interior mirror. Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

### Switching on/off

**Switching on automatically**

The system is automatically active after every driving off.

**Switching on/off manually**

Press button briefly:

- The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed. The systems are individually switched off according to their respective settings.
LED lights up orange or goes out respective to their individual settings. Adjust as needed. The individual settings are stored for the driver profile currently in use.

Press button again:
▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
▷ The LED lights up green.

Hold down button:
▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.
▷ The LED goes out.

### Warning with braking function

#### Display

If a collision with a person detected in this way is imminent, a warning symbol appears on the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display.

The red symbol is displayed and a signal sounds.

Intervene immediately by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

#### Braking intervention

The warning prompts the driver to react. During a warning, the maximum braking force is used. Prerequisite for the brake booster is sufficiently quick and sufficiently hard stepping on the brake pedal. If there is a risk of collision, the system may assist with braking. When the vehicle is traveling at a low speed, the vehicle may come to a complete stop.

Manual transmission: during a braking intervention up to a complete stop, the engine may be shut down.

The braking intervention occurs only if vehicle stability has not been restricted, for instance by deactivating the DSC Dynamic Stability Control.

The driver may cancel the braking intervention by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Object detection can be restricted. Follow the limitations of the detection range and functional restrictions.

#### System limits

#### Safety information

**WARNING**

The system can react not at all, too late, incorrectly, or without justification due to the system limits. There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Follow the information regarding the system limits and actively intervene, if needed.

#### Detection range

The detection potential of the camera is limited.

Thus, a warning might not be issued or be issued late.

E.g., the following situations may not be detected:
▷ Partially covered pedestrians.
▷ Pedestrians that are not detected as such because of the viewing angle or contour.
▷ Pedestrians outside of the detection range.
▷ Pedestrians having a body size less than 32 in/80 cm.

#### Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional or may not be available in the following situations:
▷ In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
▷ In tight curves.
▷ If the field of view of the camera or the windshield are dirty or covered.
▷ If the driving stability control systems are deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
▷ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
▷ If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.
▷ When it is dark outside.

**BRAKE FORCE DISPLAY**

**Concept**
Additional brake lights indicate emergency braking to the traffic behind. This can reduce the risk of a rear-end collision.

**General information**

▷ During normal brake application, the brake lights light up.
▷ During heavy brake application, the flashers additionally light up.

**ALERTNESS ASSISTANT**

**Concept**
The system can detect decreasing alertness or fatigue of the driver during long, monotonous trips, for instance on highways. In this situation, it is recommended that the driver takes a break.

**Safety information**

⚠️ **WARNING**
The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess one's physical state. An increasing lack of alertness or fatigue may not be detected or not be detected in time. There is a risk of an accident. Make sure that the driver is rested and alert. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions.

**Function**
The system is switched on each time the engine is started and cannot be switched off.

After travel has begun, the system monitors certain aspects of the driver’s behavior, so that decreasing alertness or fatigue can be detected.

This procedure takes the following criteria into account:

▷ Personal driving style, for instance steering behavior.
▷ Driving conditions, for instance length of trip.

Starting at approximately 43 mph/70 km/h, the system is active and can display a recommendation to take a break.

**Break recommendation**
If the driver becomes less alert or fatigued, a message is displayed in the Control Display with the recommendation to take a break.

A recommendation to take a break is displayed only once during an uninterrupted trip.

After a break, another recommendation to take a break cannot be displayed until after approximately 45 minutes.

**System limits**
The function may be limited in the following situations, for instance and will either output an incorrect warning or no warning at all:

▷ When the clock is set incorrectly.
When the vehicle speed is mainly below about 43 mph/70 km/h.
With a sporty driving style, such as during rapid acceleration or when cornering fast.
In active driving situations, such as when changing lanes frequently.
When the road surface is poor.
In the event of strong side winds.
The system is reset approx. 45 minutes after parking the vehicle, for instance in the case of a break during longer trips on highways.

**POSTCRASH – IBRAKE**

**Concept**
In the event of an accident, the system can bring the vehicle to a halt automatically without intervention by the driver in certain situations. This can reduce the risk of a further collision and the consequences thereof.

**At standstill**
After coming to a halt, the brake is released automatically. Secure the vehicle against rolling.

**Harder vehicle braking**
It can be necessary to bring the vehicle in certain situations to a halt quicker.
To do this, for a short time the braking pressure applied when stepping on the brake pedal must be higher than the braking pressure achieved by the automatic braking function. This interrupts automatic braking.

**Interrupting automatic braking**
It can be necessary to interrupt automatic braking in certain situations, for instance for an evasive maneuver.
Interrupt automatic braking:
▷ By pressing the brake pedal.
▷ By pressing the accelerator pedal.
VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM ABS

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking.
The vehicle maintains its steering power even during full brake applications, thus increasing active safety.
ABS is operational every time you start the engine.

BRAKE ASSISTANT

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system automatically produces the greatest possible braking force boost. It reduces the braking distance to a minimum during emergency stop.
This system utilizes all of the benefits provided by the Antilock Brake System ABS.
Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal for the duration of the emergency stop.

DSC DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL

Concept
Within the physical limits, the system helps to keep the vehicle on a steady course by reducing engine speed and by applying brakes to the individual wheels.

General information
DSC detects the following unstable driving conditions, for instance:
▷ Fishtailing, which can lead to oversteering.
▷ Loss of traction of the front wheels, which can lead to understeering.
Dynamic Traction Control DTC, refer to page 138, is a version of the DSC where forward momentum is optimized.

Safety information

WARNING
The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Indicator/warning lights
The indicator light flashes: DSC controls the drive and braking forces.
The indicator light lights up: DSC has malfunctioned.
Deactivating DSC: DSC OFF

General information
When DSC is deactivated, driving stability is reduced during acceleration and when driving in curves.
To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Deactivating DSC
Press and hold this button but not longer than approx. 10 seconds, until the indicator light for DSC OFF lights up in the instrument cluster and displays DSC OFF.
DSC is switched off.

Activating DSC
Press button.
DSC OFF and the DSC OFF indicator light go out.

Indicator/warning lights
When DSC is deactivated, DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster.
The indicator light lights up: DSC is deactivated.

Automatic activation
When DSC is deactivated, automatic activation occurs in the following situations:
▷ The vehicle has a flat tire.
▷ When activating cruise control in TRACTION or DSC OFF mode.

DTC DYNAMIC TRACTION CONTROL

Concept
DTC is a version of the DSC Dynamic Stability Control where forward momentum is optimized.
The system ensures maximum headway on special road conditions, for instance unplowed snowy roads or loose road surfaces, but with somewhat limited vehicle stability.
When DTC is activated, the vehicle has maximum traction. Driving stability is limited during acceleration and when driving in curves.
Drive carefully.
You may find it useful to briefly activate DTC under the following special circumstances:
▷ When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.
▷ When freeing vehicle from deep snow or driving off from loose ground.
▷ When driving with snow chains.

Deactivating/activating DTC Dynamic Traction Control

Activating DTC
Press button.
TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster and the indicator light for DSC OFF lights up.

Deactivating DTC
Press button again.
TRACTION and the DSC OFF indicator light go out.
PERFORMANCE CONTROL

Performance Control enhances the agility of the vehicle.
To increase maneuverability, wheels are braked individually when a sporty driving style is used.

DYNAMIC DAMPING CONTROL

Concept
The tuning of the suspension can be changed with the system.
The system offers several different programs.
The programs are selected via the MINI Driving Modes switch.

Programs

MID/GREEN
Balanced tuning of the shock absorbers for more comfort.

SPORT
Consistently sporty tuning of the shock absorbers for greater driving agility.

MINI DRIVING MODES SWITCH

Concept
The MINI Driving Modes switch helps to fine-tune the vehicle's settings and features. Choose between three different programs.
Pressing the MINI Driving Modes switch will activate the particular program.

Operating the programs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MINI Driving Modes switch</th>
<th>Program</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SPORT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GREEN</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MID

MID provides balanced tuning.
With each starting operation, MID is activated using the Start/Stop button.

GREEN

Concept
GREEN, refer to page 190, provides consistent tuning to maximize range.

Activating GREEN
Press the MINI Driving Modes switch downward until GREEN is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Configuring GREEN

Via MINI Driving Modes switch
1. Activate GREEN.
2. "Configure GREEN"
3. Configure the program.
   This configuration is retrieved when GREEN is activated.

Via Central Information Display (CID):
1. ☰ "Settings"
2. "GREEN Mode"
   or
1. ☰ "Settings"
2. "Driving mode"
3. "Configure GREEN"
Configure the program.
This configuration is retrieved when GREEN is activated.

SPORT

Concept
Consistently sporty tuning of the drivetrain for greater driving agility.

With the appropriate equipment, the tuning of the suspension also changes and SPORT can be individually configured.
The configuration is stored for the driver profile currently in use.

Activating SPORT
Press the MINI Driving Modes switch upward until SPORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Configuring SPORT
Depending on your vehicle's optional features, when the display is activated on the Control Display, the SPORT driving mode can be configured for individual specifications.

Via MINI Driving Modes switch
1. Activate SPORT.
2. Select "Configure SPORT".
3. Configure the program.

Via Central Information Display (CID):
SPORT can also be configured before it is activated:

1. "Settings"
2. "Driving mode"
3. "Configure SPORT"
This configuration is retrieved when SPORT is activated.

Configuring driving program
Settings can be made for the following driving programs in Driving mode:
▷ GREEN, refer to page 139.
▷ SPORT, refer to page 140.

Displays

Program selection
Pressing the MINI Driving Modes switch displays a list of programs, which can be selected.

Selected program
The instrument cluster displays the selected program.

Display on the Central Information Display (CID)
Program changes can be displayed on the Central Information Display (CID).

1. "Settings"
2. "Control display"
3. "Driving mode info"

DRIVE-OFF ASSISTANT

Concept
This system supports driving off on uphill grades. The parking brake is not required.

Driving off with the drive-off assistant
1. Hold the vehicle in place with the foot brake.
2. Release the foot brake and drive off without delay.
After the foot brake is released, the vehicle is held in place for approx. 2 seconds.

**SERVOTRONIC**

Servotronic is a speed-dependent power steering function.

The system provides the steering force with more support at low speeds than at higher ones. This makes it easier to park, for instance, and makes steering more direct when driving at faster speeds.

Furthermore, the steering force adapts according to the driving program, so that a direct, sporty feel or a comfortable steering response is conveyed.
VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

CAMERA-BASED CRUISE CONTROL

Concept
Using this system, a desired speed and a distance to a vehicle ahead can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel.

The system maintains the desired speed on clear roads. For this purpose, the vehicle accelerates or brakes automatically.

If a vehicle is driving ahead of you, the system adjusts the speed of your vehicle so that the set distance to the vehicle ahead is maintained. The speed is adjusted as far as the given situation allows.

The distance can be adjusted in several steps. For safety reasons, it depends on the respective speed.

General information
A camera on the interior mirror is used to detect vehicles driving ahead.

Depending on the driving settings, the features of the cruise control can change in certain areas.

Safety information

WARNING
The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING
The desired speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING
Risk of accident due to too high speed differences to other vehicles, for instance in the following situations:
▷ When fast approaching a slowly moving vehicle.
▷ Vehicle suddenly swerving into own lane.
▷ When fast approaching standing vehicles.
There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Button</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>🚦</td>
<td>Cruise control on/off, refer to page 143.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SET</td>
<td>Store/maintain speed, refer to page 144.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Button Function

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Button</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>![RES CNCL]</td>
<td>Pause cruise control, refer to page 143. Continue cruise control with the last setting, refer to page 144.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![ ]</td>
<td>Reduce distance, refer to page 144.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![ ]</td>
<td>Increase distance, refer to page 144.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![ ]</td>
<td>Increase speed, refer to page 144.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![ ]</td>
<td>Reduce speed, refer to page 144.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Buttons are arranged according to vehicle's series, optional features and country specifications.

### Camera

The camera is installed near the interior mirror. Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

### Functional requirements

#### Speed range

The system is best used on well-constructed roads.

The system is functional at speeds beginning at approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

The max. speed that can be set is 85 mph/140 km/h.

Active cruise control is paused below approx. 20 mph/30 km/h. The system does not brake to a stop.

### Switching on/off and interrupting cruise control

#### Switching on

Press button on the steering wheel.

Display in the instrument cluster lights up.

Display in the instrument cluster lights up. The current speed is adopted as desired speed and displayed with symbol.

Cruise control is active and maintains the set speed.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

#### Switching off

Press button on the steering wheel.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

#### Interrupting manually

Press button on the steering wheel.

#### Interrupting automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations:

- When the driver applies the brakes.
- Manual transmission: when the clutch pedal is depressed for a few seconds or released while a gear is not engaged.
- If selector lever position N is set.
- Dynamic Traction Control DTC is activated or DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.
If DSC Dynamic Stability Control intervenes. If the detection range of the camera is impaired, for instance by soiling, heavy precipitation or glare effects from the sun. If the vehicle in front decelerates below a speed of approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

**Setting the speed**

**Maintaining/storing the speed**

Press \( + \) or \( - \) button in the interrupted state. When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

The stored speed is displayed on the symbol.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

The speed can also be stored as follows:

Press button.

**Changing the speed**

\( + \) or \( - \) button: press until the desired speed is set. If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

\( + \) or \( - \) button: each time it is pressed to the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by approx. 1 mph/1 km/h.

\( + \) or \( - \) button: each time it is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

\( + \) or \( - \) button: hold down to repeat the action.

**Adjusting distance**

**Safety information**

**WARNING**

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility. Due to the system limits, braking can be late. There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Be aware to the traffic situation at all times. Adjust the distance to the traffic and weather conditions and maintain the prescribed safety distance, possibly by braking.

**Reduce distance**

Press button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

The set distance is briefly displayed in the left part of the instrument cluster.

**Increase distance**

Press button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

The set distance is briefly displayed in the left part of the instrument cluster.

**Continuing cruise control**

**General information**

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unintentional braking or accelerating may occur.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- When the system is switched off.
- When the ignition is switched off.
Calling up stored speed and distance

Press button with the system interrupted. Cruise control is continued with the stored values. The selected distance is briefly displayed in the Info Display.

Switching distance control on/off

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not react to traffic driving ahead of you, but instead maintains the stored speed. There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions and brake as needed.

Switching distance control off

Press and hold this button.

Or:

Press and hold this button.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up.

To switch distance control back on, press one of the two buttons again briefly.

After changing over distance control, a Check Control message is displayed.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Desired speed and stored speed

In addition to the indicator light, the desired speed is displayed in the Info Display.

Display lights up green: system is active, the display indicates the desired speed.

Display lights up orange: system is interrupted, the display indicates the stored speed.

No display: system is switched off.

If no speed is indicated, it is possible that the conditions necessary for operation are not currently fulfilled.

Distance to vehicle ahead of you

Selected distance from the vehicle driving ahead is briefly displayed in the left hand portion of the Info Display.

Distance display

Distance 1
Distance 2
Distance 3
Distance 4
This value is set automatically after the system is switched on.

Detected vehicle

Symbol lights up orange:
A vehicle has been detected ahead of you.

Indicator/warning lights

Symbol flashes orange:
The conditions are not adequate for the system to work.

The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.
Symbol flashes red and a signal sounds: Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

The system has been interrupted or distance control is temporarily suppressed because the accelerator pedal is being pressed; a vehicle was not detected.

Distance control is temporarily suppressed because the accelerator pedal is being pressed; a vehicle was detected.

Displays in the Head-up Display
The information from Active Cruise Control can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

System limits
Detection range

The detection capacity of the system and the automatic braking capacity are limited. Two-wheeled vehicles for instance might not be detected.

Deceleration
The system does not decelerate in the following situations:
▷ For oncoming traffic.
▷ Unlit vehicles or vehicles with nonworking lighting at night.

Swerving vehicles
A vehicle driving in front of you is not detected until it is completely within the same lane as your vehicle.

If a vehicle driving ahead of you suddenly swerves into your lane, the system may not be able to automatically restore the selected distance. It may not be possible to restore the selected distance in certain situations, including if you are driving significantly faster than vehicles driving ahead of you, for instance when rapidly approaching a truck. When a vehicle driving ahead of you is reliably detected, the system requests that the driver intervene by braking and carrying out evasive maneuvers, if needed.

Cornering
If the desired speed is too high for a curve, the speed is reduced slightly, although curves cannot be anticipated in advance. Therefore, drive into a curve at an appropriate speed.
The system has a limited detection range. Situations can arise in tight curves where a vehicle driving ahead will not be detected or will be detected very late.

When you approach a curve the system may briefly report vehicles in the next lane due to the bend of the curve. If the system decelerates you may compensate it by briefly accelerating. After releasing the accelerator pedal the system is reactivated and controls speed independently.

Weather
The following restrictions can occur under unfavorable weather or light conditions:

▷ Poorer vehicle recognition.
▷ Short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already recognized.

Examples of unfavorable weather or light conditions:

▷ Wet conditions.
▷ Snowfall.
▷ Slush.
▷ Fog.
▷ Glare.

Drive attentively, and react to the current traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or evading.

Engine power
The desired speed may not be maintained on uphill grades if engine power is insufficient.

Malfunction
A Check Control message is displayed if the system fails or was automatically deactivated. The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

▷ When an object was not correctly detected.
▷ In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
▷ In tight curves.
▷ If the field of view of the camera or the windshield are dirty or covered.
▷ When driving toward bright lights.
▷ Up to 20 seconds after the start of the engine, via the Start/Stop button.
▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

CRUISE CONTROL

Concept
Using this system, a desired speed can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel. The system maintains the desired speed. The system accelerates and brakes automatically as needed.

General information
The system is functional at speeds beginning at approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

Depending on the driving settings, the features of the cruise control can change in certain areas.

Safety information

WARNING
The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.
WARNING
The use of the system can lead to an increased risk of accidents in the following situations, for instance:
▷ On winding roads.
▷ In heavy traffic.
▷ On slippery roads, in fog, snow, or wet conditions, or on a loose road surface.
There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Only use the system if driving at constant speed is possible.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Button</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cruise control on/off, refer to page 148.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Store speed, refer to page 148.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pause cruise control, refer to page 148. Continue cruise control with the last setting, refer to page 149.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increase speed, refer to page 148.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reduce speed, refer to page 148.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Switching on/off and interrupting cruise control

Switching on

Press button on the steering wheel.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up.

Switching off

Press button on the steering wheel.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Interrupting manually

When active, press the button on the steering wheel.

Interrupting automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations:
▷ When the driver applies the brakes.
▷ If the clutch pedal is depressed for a few seconds or released while a gear is not engaged.
▷ If the gear engaged is too high for the current speed.
▷ If selector lever position N is set.
▷ Dynamic Traction Control DTC is activated or DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.
▷ If DSC Dynamic Stability Control intervenes.

Setting the speed

Maintaining/storing the speed

Press + or - button in the interrupted state.
When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.
The stored speed is displayed in the instrument cluster.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

The speed can also be stored as follows:

Press button.

Changing the speed

+ or - button: press until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- + or - button: each time it is pressed to the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by approx. 1 mph/1 km/h.
- + or - button: each time it is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.
- + or - button: pressing it to the resistance point and holding it accelerates or decelerates the vehicle without requiring pressure on the accelerator pedal. After the button is released, the vehicle maintains its final speed. Pressing the switch beyond the resistance point causes the vehicle to accelerate more rapidly.

Continuing cruise control

General information

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unintentional braking or accelerating may occur.

Calling up stored speed

Press button on the steering wheel.

The stored speed is reached again and maintained.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Indicator light

Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, the indicator light in the instrument cluster indicates whether the system is switched on.

Desired speed and stored speed

The desired speed is displayed together with the symbol.

- Display lights up green: system is active, the display indicates the desired speed.
- Display lights up orange: system is interrupted, the display indicates the stored speed.
- No display: system is switched off.

If no speed is indicated, it is possible that the conditions necessary for operation are not currently fulfilled.

System limits

Engine power

The desired speed is also maintained downhill, but may not be maintained on uphill grades if engine power is insufficient.

PDC PARK DISTANCE CONTROL

Concept

PDC is a support when parking. When you slowly approach an object in the rear - or also in the front of the vehicle if the feature is available - then the object is reported through:
▷ Signal tones.
▷ Visual display.

General information

The ultrasound sensors for measuring the distances are located in the bumpers.
The maneuvering range, depending on obstacles and environmental conditions, is approx. 6 ft/2 m.
An acoustic warning is first given in the following situations:
▷ By the front middle sensors and the two corner sensors at approx. 24 in/60 cm from the object.
▷ By the rear middle sensors at approx. 5 ft/1.50 m from the object.
▷ When a collision is imminent.

Safety information

WARNING
The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.

WARNING
Due to high speeds when PDC Park Distance Control is activated, the warning can be delayed due to physical circumstances. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Avoid approaching an object too fast. Avoid driving off fast while PDC Park Distance Control is not yet active.

Overview

With front PDC: button in vehicle

Overview

With front PDC: button in vehicle

Ultrasound sensors

Ultrasound sensors of the PDC, for instance in the bumpers.

Functional requirements

Ensure full functionality:
▷ Do not cover sensors, for instance with stickers, bicycle racks.
▷ Keep the sensors clean and unobstructed.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system switches on automatically in the following situations:
▷ If selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.
   The rearview camera also switches on.
▷ With front PDC: when obstacles are detected behind or in front of the vehicle by PDC and the speed is slower than approx. 2.5 mph/4 km/h.
With front PDC: automatic activation on obstacle detection can be switched off. Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "Settings"
2. "Parking"
3. Select setting.
   The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel
The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.
Switch the system back on, if needed.

With front PDC: switching on/off manually

Press park assistance button.

▷ On: the LED lights up.
▷ Off: the LED goes out.
The rearview camera image is displayed if the reverse gear is engaged when pressing the park assistance button.

WARNING

Signal tones
When approaching an object, an intermittent sound indicates the position of the object. E.g., if an object is detected to the left rear of the vehicle, a signal tone sounds from the left rear speaker.
The shorter the distance to the object, the shorter the intervals.
If the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 10 inches/25 cm, a continuous tone is sounded.
With front PDC: if objects are simultaneously located both in front of and behind the vehicle, an alternating continuous signal is sounded.

The signal tone is switched off, when selector lever position P is engaged on vehicles with Steptronic transmission.

Volume
The ratio of the PDC signal tone volume to the entertainment volume can be adjusted.
Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings"
2. "Tone"
3. "Volume settings"
4. "PDC"
5. To adjust: turn the Controller.
6. To store: press the Controller.
Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Visual warning
The approach of the vehicle to an object can be shown on the Control Display. Objects that are farther away are already displayed on the Control Display before a signal sounds.
A display appears as soon as Park Distance Control (PDC) is activated.
The range of the sensors is represented in colors: red, green and yellow.
When the image of the rearview camera is displayed, the switch can be made to PDC: "Rear view camera"

System limits

Safety information

WARNING
The system can react not at all, too late, incorrectly, or without justification due to the system limits. There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Follow the information regarding the system limits and actively intervene, if needed. ◄
Limits of ultrasonic measurement

Ultrasonic measuring might not function under the following circumstances:

▷ For small children and animals.
▷ For persons with certain clothing, for instance coats.
▷ With external interference of the ultrasound, for instance from passing vehicles or loud machines.
▷ When sensors are dirty, iced over, damaged or out of position.
▷ If cargo protrudes.
▷ Under certain weather conditions such as high relative humidity, wet conditions, snowfall, extreme heat, or strong wind.
▷ With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
▷ With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
▷ With moving objects.
▷ With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges or cargo.
▷ With objects with corners and sharp edges.
▷ With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.
▷ For objects with porous surfaces.
▷ Low objects already displayed, for instance curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.

False warnings

The system may issue a warning under the following conditions even though there is no obstacle within the detection range:

▷ In heavy rain.
▷ When sensors are very dirty or covered with ice.
▷ When sensors are covered in snow.
▷ On rough road surfaces.
▷ On uneven surfaces, such as speed bumps.

▷ In large buildings with right angles and smooth walls, for instance in underground garages.
▷ In automatic vehicle washes.
▷ Due to heavy exhaust.
▷ Due to other ultrasound sources, for instance sweeping machines, high pressure steam cleaners or neon lights.

The malfunction is signaled by a continuous tone alternating between the front and rear speakers. As soon as the malfunction due to other ultrasound sources is no longer present, the system is again fully functional.

With front PDC: to reduce false alarms, switch off automatic PDC activation on obstacle detection, for instance in vehicle washes; see Switching on/off.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Red symbol is displayed, and the range of the sensors is dimmed on the Control Display.

PDC has failed. Have the system checked by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

REARVIEW CAMERA

Concept

The rearview camera provides assistance in parking and maneuvering backwards. The area behind the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driv-
ing style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate. ◄

**Overview**

**If the vehicle is equipped accordingly: button in the vehicle**

![Park assistance button](image)

**Camera**

The camera lens is located in the handle of the tailgate.

The image quality may be impaired by dirt. If necessary, clean the camera lens.

**Switching on/off**

**Switching on automatically**

The system is switched on automatically if selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.

**Automatic deactivation during forward travel**

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded. Switch the system back on, if needed.

**If the vehicle is equipped accordingly: switching on/off manually**

Press park assistance button.

▷ On: the LED lights up.
▷ Off: the LED goes out.

The PDC is shown on the Control Display.

The rearview camera image is displayed if the reverse gear is engaged when pressing the park assistance button.

**Switching the view via the Central Information Display (CID)**

With PDC Park Distance Control activated:

"Rear view camera"

The rearview camera image is displayed.

**Display on the Control Display**

**Functional requirement**

▷ The rearview camera is switched on.
▷ The tailgate is fully closed.
▷ Keep the recording range of the camera clear. Protruding cargo or carrier systems and trailers that are not connected to a trailer power socket can lead to malfunctions.

**Activating the assistance functions**

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

▷ Parking aid lines
  "Parking aid lines"
  Lanes and turning radius are indicated.
▷ Obstacle marking
If the vehicle is equipped accordingly, obstacles are highlighted.

**Pathway lines**

Pathway lines can be superimposed on the image of the rearview camera. Pathway lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads. Pathway lines depend on the current steering angle and are continuously adjusted to the steering wheel movements.

**Turning radius lines**

Turning radius lines can be superimposed on the image of the rearview camera. Turning radius lines show the course of the smallest possible turning radius on a level road. Only one turning radius line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

If the vehicle is equipped accordingly, obstacle markings can be faded into the image of the rearview camera. The colored thresholds of the obstacle markings match the markings of the PDC Park Distance Control.

**Parking using pathway and turning radius lines**

1. Position the vehicle so that the turning radius lines lead to within the limits of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the pathway line covers the corresponding turning radius line.
**Display settings**

**Brightness**
With the rearview camera switched on:
1. ☀ Select the symbol.
2. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is reached and press the Controller.

**Contrast**
With the rearview camera switched on:
1. ● Select the symbol.
2. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is reached and press the Controller.

**System limits**

**Detection of objects**
Very low obstacles or high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be recognized by the system.

If the vehicle is equipped accordingly, certain assistance functions also take into account data from PDC Park Distance Control.

Follow the notes in the PDC Park Distance Control chapter.

The objects displayed on the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Therefore, do not estimate the distance from the objects on the display.

**PARKING ASSISTANT**

**Concept**

This system assists the driver in parking parallel to the road.

**General information**

Parking assistant handling is divided into three steps:

▷ Switching on and activating.
▷ Parking space search.
▷ Parking.

Ultrasound sensors measure parking spaces on both sides of the vehicle.

The parking assistant calculates the best possible parking line and takes control of steering during the parking procedure.

System status and instructions on required actions are displayed on the Control Display.

A component of the parking assistant is the PDC Park Distance Control.

**Safety information**

⚠️ WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.⚠️
NOTE

The parking assistant can steer the vehicle over or onto curbs. There is a risk of damage to property. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate. ◄

The safety information of the PDC Park Distance Control applies in addition.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

![Park assistance button](image)

Ultrasound sensors

The ultrasound sensors for measuring parking spaces are located on the wheel housing.

Functional requirements

Ultrasound sensors

Ensure full functionality:

- Do not cover sensors, for instance with stickers.

- Keep the sensors clean and unobstructed.

For measuring parking spaces

- Maximum speed while driving forward approx. 22 mph/35 km/h.
- Maximum distance to row of parked vehicles: 5 ft/1.5 m.

Suitable parking space

- Gaps behind an object that has a min. length of 5 ft/1.5 m.
- Gap between two objects with a minimum length of approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.
- Min. length of gap between two objects: your vehicle's length plus approx. 3.3 ft/1.0 m.
- Minimum depth: approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.

For parking

- Doors and tailgate are closed.
- The parking brake is released.
- When parking in parking spaces on the driver's side, the corresponding turn signal must be set.

Switching on and activating

Switching on with the button

Press park assistance button. The LED lights up.

The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.

Parking assistant is activated automatically.

Switching on with reverse gear

Shift into reverse.

The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.

To activate: "Parking Assistant"
Indicator on the Control Display

System activated/deactivated

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gray: the system is not available. White: the system is available but not activated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The system is activated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Parking space search and system status

- Colored symbols, see arrows, on the side of the vehicle image; the parking assistant is activated and the parking space search is active.
- Control Display shows suitable parking spaces at the edge of the road next to the vehicle symbol. When the parking assistant is active, suitable parking spaces are highlighted.

The parking procedure is active. Steering control has been taken over by system.

Parking space search is always active whenever the vehicle is moving forward slow and straight, even if the system is deactivated. When the system is deactivated, the displays on the Control Display are shown in gray.

Parking using the parking assistant

Parking

1. Press the park assistance button or shift into reverse gear to switch on the parking assistant, refer to page 156. Activate the parking assistant, if needed.

2. Pass the row of parked vehicles at a speed of up to approx. 22 mph/35 km/h and at a distance of maximum 5 ft/1.5 m.

The status of the parking space search and possible parking spaces are displayed on the display, refer to page 157.

3. Follow the instructions on the display.

   The best possible parking position will come after gear change on the stationary vehicle - wait for the automatic steering wheel move.

   The end of the parking procedure is indicated on the display.

4. Adjust the parking position yourself, if needed.

Interrupting manually

The parking assistant can be interrupted at any time:

- Press park assistance button.
- "Parking Assistant"

Interrupting automatically

The system is interrupted automatically in the following situations:

- If the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.
- If a gear is selected that does not match the instruction on the display.
- If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 6 mph/10 km/h.
Possibly on snow-covered or slippery road surfaces.

If a maximum number of parking attempts or the time taken for parking is exceeded.

If the PDC Park Distance Control displays clearances that are too small.

When switching into other functions of the radio.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Resuming

An interrupted parking procedure can be continued, if needed.

Reactivate the parking assistant, refer to page 156, and follow the instructions on the display.

Switching off

The system can be switched off as follows:

- Press park assistance button.
- Switching off the ignition.

System limits

Safety information

WARNING

The system can react not at all, too late, incorrectly, or without justification due to the system limits. There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Follow the information regarding the system limits and actively intervene, if needed.

No parking assistance

The parking assistant does not offer assistance in the following situations:

- In tight curves.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- On bumpy road surfaces such as gravel roads.
- On slippery ground.
- With accumulations of leaves/snow in the parking space.
- With a mounted emergency wheel.
- With ditches or edges, for instance an edge of a port.

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

Ultrasonic measuring might not function under the following circumstances:

- For small children and animals.
- For persons with certain clothing, for instance coats.
- With external interference of the ultrasound, for instance from passing vehicles or loud machines.
- When sensors are dirty, iced over, damaged or out of position.
- If cargo protrudes.
- Under certain weather conditions such as high relative humidity, wet conditions, snowfall, extreme heat, or strong wind.
- With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
- With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- With moving objects.
- With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges or cargo.
- With objects with corners and sharp edges.
- With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.
- For objects with porous surfaces.
- Low objects already displayed, for instance curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.
- The parking assistant may identify parking spaces that are not suitable for parking.
Tire size
The parking position may vary depending on the tire size.

Malfunction
A Check Control message is displayed.
The parking assistant failed. Have the system checked by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

INTERIOR AIR QUALITY

The air quality inside the vehicle is improved by an emissions-tested interior, a microfilter, and a climate-control system for regulating temperature, air flow, and recirculated-air mode.

In addition there are other functions which depend on the vehicle’s equipment, for instance microfilter/activated-charcoal filter, automatic climate control, and parked-car ventilation.

AIR CONDITIONER

1 Air distribution settings
2 Air flow
3 Temperature
4 Seat heating, right 61
5 Air conditioning
6 Recirculated-air mode
7 Rear window defroster
8 Windshield defroster
Climate control functions in detail

Switching the system on/off

Switching on
Set any air flow.

Switching off
Turn the wheel for air flow all the way to the left.

Temperature

Concept
The system heats or cools, depending on the set temperature.

Settings
Turn the ring to set the desired temperature.

Air conditioning

Concept
The air in the car's interior will be cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

The car's interior can only be cooled with the engine running.

Switching on/off
Press button. The LED is illuminated with air conditioning switched on.

Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog up briefly when the engine is started. The air conditioner produces condensation water, refer to page 187, that will exit from below the vehicle.

Recirculated-air mode

Concept
You may react to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air flow within the vehicle.

Operation
Press button repeatedly to select an operating mode:

▷ LED off: outside air flows in continuously.
▷ LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air into the vehicle is permanently blocked.

To prevent window condensation, recirculated-air mode switches off automatically after a certain amount of time, depending on the external temperature.

With constant recirculated-air mode, the air quality in the car's interior deteriorates and the fogging of the windows increases.

If the windows fog over, switch off recirculated-air mode and increase the air flow, if needed.

Controlling the air flow manually

Concept
The air flow for climate control can be adjusted manually.
Operation
Turn the ring to set the desired air flow.
The higher the air flow, the more effective the heating or cooling will be.

The air flow from the air conditioner may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

Controlling the air distribution manually

Concept
The air distribution for climate control can be adjusted manually.

Operation
Turn the wheel to select the desired program or the desired intermediate setting.

- Windows.
- Upper body region.
- Floor area.
- Windows, upper body region, and floor area.

Defrosting windows and removing condensation
Make the following settings to defrost the windows and remove condensation:

- Direct the air distribution onto the windows.
- Increasing the air flow.
- Increase the temperature.
- Switch on the air conditioning if needed.

Windshield defroster
Press button. The LED lights up.
The front window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

Rear window defroster
Press button. The LED lights up.
The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

When GREEN Mode is activated, the heater output is reduced.

Microfilter
In external and recirculated-air mode the microfilter filters dust and pollen from the air.
Have this filter changed during vehicle maintenance, refer to page 229.
AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL

Climate control functions in detail

Switching the system on/off

Switching on
Set any air flow.

Switching off
Turn wheel for air flow to the left until the control switches off.

Temperature

Concept
The automatic climate control achieves the set temperature as quickly as possible, if necessary.
by using the maximum cooling or heating power, and then keeps it constant.

Settings

Turn the ring to set the desired temperature.

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. The automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

Air conditioning

Concept

The air in the car's interior will be cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

The car's interior can only be cooled with the engine running.

Switching on/off

Press button.

The LED is illuminated with the system switched on.

Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog up briefly when the engine is started.

The air conditioning is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water, refer to page 187, develops and drains underneath the vehicle. This is normal.

Maximum cooling

Concept

The system is set to the lowest temperature, maximum air flow and recirculated-air mode.

General information

The function is available with external temperatures beyond approx. 32 °F/0 °C and with the engine running.

Air flows out of the vents to the upper body region. The vents need to be open for this.

The air flow can be adjusted with the air flow active.

Switching on/off

Press button.

The LED is illuminated with the system switched on.

The system is set to the lowest temperature, optimum air flow and air circulation mode.

AUTO program

Concept

Air flow, air distribution and temperature are controlled automatically.

Switching on/off

Press button.

The LED is illuminated with the AUTO program switched on.

Depending on the selected temperature, AUTO intensity and outside influences, the air is directed to the windshield, side windows, upper body, and into the floor area.

The following features are switched on automatically with the AUTO program:

▷ The air conditioning, refer to page 164.

To switch off the program: press the button again or manually adjust the air distribution.

Intensity

With the AUTO program activated, the automatic intensity control can be changed.
Turn the ring to set the desired intensity from soft to intensive.

The set intensity is displayed via the position of the illuminated LED segment.

**Convertible program**

When the convertible top is open, the convertible program is activated as well. In the convertible program, the automatic climate control is optimized for driving with the convertible top open. In addition, the air flow is increased as the vehicle speed increases.

The efficiency of the convertible program can be greatly enhanced by installing the wind deflector.

**Recirculated-air mode**

**Concept**

You may react to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air flow within the vehicle.

**Operation**

Press button repeatedly to select an operating mode:

- LED off: outside air flows in continuously.
- LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air into the vehicle is permanently blocked.

To prevent window condensation, recirculated-air mode switches off automatically after a certain amount of time, depending on the external temperature.

With constant recirculated-air mode, the air quality in the car’s interior deteriorates and the fogging of the windows increases.

If the windows fog over, switch off recirculated-air mode and increase the air flow, if needed.

**Controlling the air flow manually**

**Concept**

The air flow for climate control can be adjusted manually.

**General information**

To manually adjust air flow switch off AUTO program first.

**Operation**

Turn the ring to set the desired air flow.

The manually adjusted air flow is displayed via illuminated LED segments.

The air flow of the automatic climate control may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

**Controlling the air distribution manually**

**Concept**

The air distribution for climate control can be adjusted manually.

**Operation**

Press button repeatedly to select a program:

- Windows, upper body region, and floor area.
- Upper body region and floor area.
- Floor area.
- Windows and floor area.
- Windows.
- Windows and upper body region.
- Upper body region.
Defrosting windows and removing condensation

Concept
Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

Switching on/off
Press button. The LED is illuminated with the system switched on.

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

The air flow can be adjusted with the air flow active.

If there is window condensation, switch on the air conditioning too.

Windshield defroster
Press button. The LED lights up.
The front window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

Rear window defroster
Press button. The LED lights up.
The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

When GREEN Mode is activated, the heater output is reduced.

Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter
In external and recirculated-air mode the microfilter/activated charcoal filter filters dust, pollen, and gaseous pollutants out of the air.

Have this filter changed during vehicle maintenance, refer to page 229.

VENTILATION

Setting
The air flow directions can be individually adjusted:

▷ Direct ventilation:
The air flow is directly pointed onto the person. The air flow heats or cools noticeably, depending on the adjusted temperature.

▷ Indirect ventilation:
If the vents are fully or partly closed, the air is directly routed into the car's interior.

Front ventilation

▷ Turn knob for continuous opening and closing of the vents.

▷ Swivel the vents to alter the direction of the vent flow, arrows.

PARKED-CAR VENTILATION

Concept
The parked-car ventilation ventilates the car's interior and lowers its temperature, if needed.

General information
The parked-car ventilation can be switched on and off directly or by using two preset activation times. The system remains switched on for 30 minutes.

The parked-car ventilation system is operated via the Central Information Display (CID).
Functional requirements
▷ Direct operation: vehicle is in radio-ready state.
▷ Direct operation or preset activation time: does not depend on external temperature.
▷ Battery is sufficiently charged.
   If parked-car ventilation is switched on, the vehicle battery will be discharged. Thus, limit the maximum activation time to save the vehicle battery. The system will be available again after the engine is started or after a short trip.
▷ Make sure that the vehicle’s date and time are set correctly.
▷ Open the vents to allow air to flow out.

Switching on/off directly
Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. 🌐 "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Activate comf. ventilation"

The symbol on the automatic climate control flashes if the system is switched on.

Preselecting the activation time
Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. 🌐 "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Timer 1:" or "Timer 2:"
4. Set the desired time.

Activating the activation time
Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. 🌐 "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Activate timer 1" or "Activate timer 2"

The symbol on the automatic climate control lights up when the activation time is activated.
VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

INTEGRATED UNIVERSAL REMOTE CONTROL

Concept

The integrated Universal Remote Control in the interior mirror can operate up to 3 functions of remote-controlled systems, such as garage door drives, barriers, or lighting systems. The integrated Universal Remote Control replaces up to 3 different hand-held transmitters. To operate the remote control, the buttons on the interior mirror must be programmed with the desired functions. The hand-held transmitter for the particular system is required in order to program the remote control.

Before selling the vehicle, delete the stored functions for the sake of security.

Safety information

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating remote-controlled systems, such as the garage door, using the integrated Universal Remote Control. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety information of the hand-held transmitter.

Compatibility

If this symbol is printed on the packaging or in the owner’s manual of the system to be controlled, the system is generally compatible with the integrated Universal Remote Control.

If you have any questions, please contact:

▷ A dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
▷ www.homelink.com on the Internet.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

Overview

Programming

General information

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Initial setup:
   Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for ap-
proximately 20 seconds until the LED on the interior mirror flashes. This erases all programming of the buttons on the interior mirror.

3. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be controlled approx. 1 to 3 inches/2.5 to 8 cm away from the buttons of the interior mirror. The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.

4. Simultaneously press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter and the button to be programmed on the interior mirror. The LED on the interior mirror will begin flashing slowly.

5. Release both buttons as soon as the LED flashes more rapidly. The LED flashing faster indicates that the button on the interior mirror has been programmed.

If the LED does not flash faster after at least 60 seconds, change the distance between the interior mirror and the hand-held transmitter and repeat the step. Several more attempts at different distances may be necessary. Wait at least 15 seconds between attempts.

Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.

6. To program other functions on other buttons, repeat steps 3 to 5.

The systems can be controlled using the interior mirror buttons.

Special feature of the rolling code wireless system

If you are unable to operate the system after repeated programming, please check if the system to be controlled features a rolling code radio system.

Read the system’s owner's manual, or press the programmed button on the interior mirror longer. If the LED on the interior mirror starts flashing rapidly and then stays lit constantly for 2 seconds, the system features a rolling code radio system. Flashing and continuous illumination of the LED will repeat for approximately 20 seconds.

For systems with a rolling code radio system, the integrated Universal Remote Control and the system also have to be synchronized.

Please read the owner’s manual to find out how to synchronize the system.

Synchronizing is easier with the aid of a second person.

Synchronizing the universal remote control with the system:

1. Park the vehicle within range of the remote-controlled system.

2. Program the relevant button on the interior mirror as described.

3. Locate and press the synchronizing button on the system being programmed. You have approx. 30 seconds for the next step.

4. Hold down the programmed button on the interior mirror for approximately 3 seconds and then release it. If necessary, repeat this step up to three times in order to finish synchronization. Once synchronization is complete, the programmed function will be carried out.

Reprogramming individual buttons

1. Switch on the ignition.

2. Press and hold the interior mirror button to be programmed.

3. As soon as the interior mirror LED starts flashing slowly, hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be controlled approx. 1 to 3 inches/2.5 to 8 cm away from the buttons of the interior mirror. The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.
4. Likewise, press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.

5. Release both buttons as soon as the interior mirror LED flashes more rapidly. The LED flashing faster indicates that the button on the interior mirror has been programmed. The system can then be controlled by the button on the interior mirror.

If the LED does not flash faster after at most 60 seconds, change the distance and repeat the programming starting with step 4. Several more attempts at different distances may be necessary. Wait at least 15 seconds between attempts.

Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.

**Operation**

**WARNING**

Body parts can be jammed when operating remote-controlled systems, such as the garage door, using the integrated Universal Remote Control. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety information of the hand-held transmitter.

The system, such as the garage door, can be operated using the button on the interior mirror while the engine is running or when the ignition is started. To do this, hold down the button within receiving range of the system until the function is activated. The interior mirror LED stays lit while the wireless signal is being transmitted.

**Deleting stored functions**

Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for approximately 20 seconds until the LED on the interior mirror flashes rapidly. All stored functions will be deleted. The functions cannot be deleted individually.

**DIGITAL COMPASS**

**Overview**

1. Control button
2. Mirror display

**Mirror display**

The point of the compass is displayed in the mirror when driving straight.

**Operating concept**

Various functions can be called up by pressing the control button with a pointed object, such as the tip of a ballpoint pen or similar object. The following setting options are displayed in succession, depending on how long the control button is pressed:

- Pressed briefly: turns display on/off.
- 3 to 6 seconds: compass zone setting.
- 6 to 9 seconds: compass calibration.
- 9 to 12 seconds: left/right-hand steering setting.
- 12 to 15 seconds: language setting.
**Setting the compass zones**
Sets the particular compass zones on the vehicle so that the compass operates correctly; refer to World map with compass zones.

**World map with magnetic zones**

![World map with magnetic zones]

**Procedure**

1. Press and hold the control button for approx. 3 to 4 seconds. The number of the set compass zone appears in the mirror.

2. To change the zone setting, press the control button quickly and repeatedly until the number of the compass zone that corresponds with your location appears in the mirror.

The set zone is stored automatically. The compass is ready for use again after approximately 10 seconds.

**Calibrating the digital compass**
The digital compass must be calibrated in the event of the following:

- The wrong compass point is displayed.
- The point of the compass displayed does not change despite changing the direction of travel.
- Not all points of the compass are displayed.

**Procedure**

1. Make sure that there are no large metallic objects or overhead power lines near the vehicle and that there is sufficient room to drive around in a circle.

2. Set the currently applicable compass zone.

3. Make sure that the convertible top is completely closed.

4. Press and hold the control button for approx. 6 to 7 seconds so that "C" appears on the display. Next, drive in a complete circle at least once at a speed of no more than 4 mph/7 km/h. If calibration is successful,
the "C" is replaced by the points of the compass.

5. Open convertible top completely.

6. Press and hold the control button for approx. 6 to 7 seconds so that "C" appears on the display. Next, drive in a complete circle at least once at a speed of no more than 4 mph/7 km/h. If calibration is successful, the "C" is replaced by the points of the compass.

**Left/right-hand steering**
The digital compass is already set for right or left-hand steering at the factory.

**Setting the language**
Press and hold the control button for approx. 12 to 13 seconds. Briefly press the control button again to switch between English "E" and German "O". Settings are stored automatically after approximately 10 seconds.

**SUN VISOR**

**Glare shield**
To provide protection against glare, fold the sun visor down or pivot it to the side.

**Vanity mirror**
A vanity mirror is located in the sun visor behind a cover.

**ASHTRAY/CIGARETTE LIGHTER**

**Overview**
The ashtray is located in one of the frontal cup holders, the cigarette lighter above it in the center console.

**Ashtray**
In order to empty the ashtray, remove the ashtray from the cup holder.

**Cigarette lighter**

**Safety information**

**WARNING**
Contact with the hot heating element or the hot socket of the cigarette lighter can cause burns. Flammable materials can ignite if the cigarette lighter falls down or is held against the respective objects. There is a risk of fire and injuries. Take hold of the cigarette lighter by its handle. Make sure that children do not use the cigarette lighter and burn themselves.

**NOTE**
If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of damage to property. Replace the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.
Operation
Push in the cigarette lighter. The cigarette lighter can be removed as soon as it pops back out.

SOCKETS

Concept
The lighter socket can be used as a socket for electrical equipment while the ignition is switched on or the engine is running.

General information
The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12 volts.

Do not damage the socket by using non-compatible connectors.

Safety information

WARNING
Devices and cables in the unfolding area of the airbags, such as portable navigation devices, can hinder the unfolding of the airbag or be thrown around in the car's interior during unfolding. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that devices and cables are not in the airbag's area of unfolding.

NOTE
Batter chargers for the vehicle battery can work with high voltages and currents, which means that the 12 volt on-board network can be overloaded or damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.

NOTE
If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of damage to property. Replace the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.

In the center console
Remove the cover or cigarette lighter.

In the cargo area
The socket is located on the right side in the cargo area.

USB INTERFACE/AUX-IN PORT

Concept
Mobile devices with USB port can be connected to the USB interface.

A mobile audio device, for instance a MP3 player, can be connected using the AUX-IN port.
**General information**

The following devices can be connected:

▷ Mobile phones supported by the USB interface.
▷ Audio devices with USB port, for instance MP3 player.
▷ USB storage devices.

Common file systems are supported. FAT32 and exFAT are the recommended formats.

Information about suitable USB storage devices can be found at www.miniusa.com/connectivity.

The following applications are possible:

▷ Exporting and importing driver profiles, refer to page 46.
▷ Playing music files via USB audio.
▷ Adding music files to the music collection and storing the music collection.
▷ Playing videos via USB video.
▷ Loading of software updates.

**Overview**

The USB interface and the AUX-IN port are located in the center console.

**Connecting an external device**

Follow the following when connecting:

▷ Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB interface.
▷ Use a flexible adapter cable.

▷ Protect the USB storage device against mechanical damage.
▷ Due to the large number of USB media available on the market, it cannot be guaranteed that every device is operable on the vehicle.
▷ Do not expose USB media to extreme environmental conditions, such as very high temperatures; refer to the owner’s manual of the device.
▷ Due to the many different compression techniques, proper playback of the media stored on the USB storage device cannot be guaranteed in all cases.
▷ A connected USB storage device will be supplied with charging current via the USB interface if the device supports this.
▷ To ensure proper transmission of the stored data, do not charge a USB storage device via the onboard socket, when it is connected to the USB interface.
▷ Depending on how the USB storage device is being used, settings may be required on the USB storage device, refer to the owner’s manual of the device.

Not compatible USB media:

▷ USB hard drives.
▷ USB hubs.
▷ USB memory card readers with multiple inserts.
▷ HFS-formatted USB media.
▷ MTP devices.
▷ Devices such as fans or lamps.
VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

SAFETY INFORMATION

WARNING
Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, for instance mobile phones, can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the car's interior.◀

NOTE
Anti-slip pads such as anti-slip mats can damage the dashboard. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use anti-slip pads.◀

OVERVIEW

The following storage compartments are available in the car's interior:

- Glove compartment on the front passenger side.
- Compartments in the doors.
- Storage compartment in the center armrest.
- Storage compartment in front of the cup holders.
- Storage compartments in the cargo area.
- Storage tray in the center console.
- Pockets on the backrests of the front seats.

GLOVE COMPARTMENT

Safety information

WARNING
Folded open, the glove compartment protrudes in the car's interior. Objects in the glove compartment can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Always close the glove compartment immediately after using it.◀

Opening

Pull the handle.

The light in the glove compartment switches on.

Closing

Fold up the cover.
Locking
The glove compartment can be locked with an integrated key to separately secure the tailgate, for instance. This prevents access to the glove compartment and to the cargo area.
After the glove compartment is locked, the remote control can be handed over, such as at a hotel, without the integrated key.

COMPARTMENTS IN THE DOORS

WARNING
Breakable objects, such as glass bottles or glasses, can break in the event of an accident or a braking or evasive maneuver. Broken glass can be scattered in the car’s interior. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not use any breakable objects while driving. Only stow breakable objects in closed storage compartments.

CENTER ARMREST

General information
The center armrest contains a storage compartment.

Opening
Press button, arrow 1, and open center armrest upward, arrow 2.

Adjusting the height
Press button, arrow 1, and swing center armrest upward or downward into the desired height, arrow 2.

CUP HOLDERS

Safety information

WARNING
Unsuitable containers in the cup holder and hot beverages can damage the cup holder and increase the risk of injury in the event of an accident. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Use light-weight, unbreakable, and sealable containers. Do not transport hot beverages. Do not force objects into the cup holder.

Front
In the center console.
Rear

In front of the rear seats.
CARGO AREA

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

LOADING

Safety information

**WARNING**
High gross weight can overheat the tires, damage them internally and cause a sudden drop in tire inflation pressure. Driving characteristics may be negatively impacted, reducing lane stability, lengthening the braking distances and changing the steering response. There is a risk of an accident. Pay attention to the permitted load capacity of the tires and never exceed the permitted gross weight.➡

**WARNING**
Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, for instance mobile phones, can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the car's interior.➡

**NOTE**
Fluids in the cargo area can cause damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that no fluids leak in the cargo area.➡

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs.” on your vehicle’s placard.

2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1,400–750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)

5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine
how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

**Load**

The maximum load is the sum of the weight of the occupants and the cargo.

The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo that can be transported.

**Stowing and securing cargo**

- Cover sharp edges and corners on the cargo.

- Heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear passenger seat backrests.

- Very heavy cargo: when the rear seat is not occupied, secure each of the outer safety belts in the opposite buckle.

- If necessary, fold down the rear backrests to stow cargo.

- Do not stack cargo above the top edge of the backrests.

- Small and light cargo: secure with ratchet straps or draw straps.

- Larger and heavy cargo: secure with cargo straps.

**LOADING AID**

**Concept**

For easier loading, the vehicle is equipped with loading aid. When the loading aid is opened, objects can be stowed that would not otherwise fit through the tailgate opening.

**Safety information**

**WARNING**

When opening and closing the loading aid, body parts can be jammed, for instance by the mechanism. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the loading aid is clear during operation.

**WARNING**

With a lifted loading aid, vehicle parts can protrude and limit the view. There is a danger of accidents and property damage. Before driving off, make sure that the loading aid is completely lowered and the tailgate is closed.

**Opening the loading aid**

1. Unlock the convertible top using the handles, arrows 1.

2. Lift convertible top, arrow 2.

3. Fold back the handles and place on the brackets, arrows 3.

**Closing the loading aid**

1. Remove handles from the brackets.

2. Push convertible top down and hold.
3. Push the handles outward to lock the convertible top.
4. Check that the convertible top is locked.

**LASHING EYES IN THE CARGO AREA**

To secure the cargo there are two lashing eyes in the cargo area.

Attach load securing aids, such as lashing straps, retaining straps, draw straps or cargo nets, to the lashing eyes in the cargo area.

**STORAGE SPACE UNDER CARGO FLOOR PANEL**

Located under the cargo floor panel on the right side is a trough for the onboard vehicle tool kit.

Fold the right side of the cargo floor panel upward to remove the onboard vehicle tool kit.

**ENLARGING THE CARGO AREA**

**Concept**

The cargo area can be enlarged as follows:

▷ The rear seat backrests can be folded down.
▷ The cargo area partition can be swung upward when the convertible top is closed.

**General information**

The rear seat backrest is divided into two parts at a ratio of 50 to 50.

The rear seat backrests can be folded down from the cargo area.

**Safety information**

**WARNING**

Danger of jamming with folding down the backrests. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear backrest and the of the head restraint is clear prior to folding down. ◄

**WARNING**

If a rear seat backrest is not locked, unsecured cargo can be thrown into the car’s interior; for instance, in the event of an accident, braking or an evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the rear seat backrest is locked after folding it back. ◄

**WARNING**

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked.
If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.⚠️

⚠️ **WARNING**
Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.⚠️

**Folding down the rear seat backrest from the cargo area**
1. Before the backrest is folded down, remove the respective safety belt from the rear belt guide, refer to page 63.
2. Pull the lever.
3. Fold the rear seat backrest forward.

**Fold back the backrest**
1. Fold up the backrest and press it into the latch. Make sure that the safety belt is not pinched.
2. Close the belt guide loop of the rear belt guide, refer to page 63.

**Cargo area partition**
1. Fold the convertible top upward as described under Loading aid, refer to page 179.
2. Swing the cargo area partition upward and pull backward out of the lower supports, arrows 1.
3. Insert the cargo area partition into the upper supports, arrows 2, until it engages and place down horizontally.
   The loading aid cannot be locked if the cargo area partition is not fully inserted into the upper supports.
4. Fold the convertible top downward as described under Loading aid, refer to page 179, and lock it.

Return the cargo area partition into the lower position so that the convertible top can be used.
DRIVE ME.
THINGS TO REMEMBER WHEN DRIVING

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

BREAKING-IN PERIOD

General information

Moving parts need to begin working together smoothly.

The following instructions will help you to achieve a long vehicle life and good efficiency.

During break-in, do not use the Launch Control, refer to page 91.

Safety information

⚠️ WARNING

Due to new parts and components, safety and driver assistance systems can react with a delay. There is a risk of an accident. After installing new parts or with a new vehicle, drive conservatively and intervene early if necessary. Observe the break-in procedures of the respective parts and components.

Engine, transmission, and axle drive

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Do not exceed the maximum engine and road speed:

- For gasoline engine 4,500 rpm and 100 mph/160 km/h.

Avoid full load or kickdown under all circumstances.

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km

The engine and vehicle speed can gradually be increased.

Tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

Brake discs and brake pads only reach their full effectiveness after approx. 300 miles/500 km.

Drive moderately during this break-in period.

Clutch

The function of the clutch reaches its optimal level only after a distance driven of approx. 300 miles/500 km. During this break-in period, engage the clutch gently.

Following part replacement

The same break-in procedures should be observed if any of the components above-mentioned have to be renewed in the course of the vehicle's operating life.
GENERAL DRIVING NOTES

Closing the tailgate

Safety information

⚠️ WARNING
An open tailgate protrudes from the vehicle and can endanger occupants and other traffic participants or damage the vehicle in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. In addition, exhaust fumes may enter the car’s interior. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not drive with the tailgate open.

Driving with the tailgate open

If driving with the tailgate open cannot be avoided:

▷ If the convertible top is closed, close all windows and the sliding sun roof.
▷ Greatly increase the air flow from the vents.
▷ Drive moderately.

Hot exhaust gas system

⚠️ WARNING
During driving operation, high temperatures can occur underneath the vehicle body, for instance caused by the exhaust gas system. If combustible materials, such as leaves or grass, come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust gas system, these materials can ignite. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not remove the heat shields installed and never apply undercoating to them. Make sure that no combustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts in driving operation, idle or during parking. Do not touch the hot exhaust gas system.

Mobile communication devices in the vehicle

⚠️ WARNING
Vehicle electronics and mobile phones can influence one another. There is radiation due to the transmission operations of mobile phones. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. If possible, in the car’s interior use only mobile phones with direct connections to an exterior antenna in order to exclude mutual interference and deflect the radiation from the car's interior.

Hydroplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tires and road surface. This phenomenon is referred to as hydroplaning. It is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.

Driving through water

General information

When driving through water, follow the following:

▷ Drive through calm water only.
▷ Drive through water only if it is not deeper than maximum 9.8 inches/25 cm.
▷ Drive through water no faster than walking speed, up to 3 mph/5 km/h.

Safety information

⚠️ NOTE
When driving too quickly through too deep water, water can enter into the engine compartment, the electrical system or the transmission. There is a risk of damage to property. When driving through water, do not exceed the maximum indicated water level and the maximum speed for driving through water.
Braking safely

**General information**
The vehicle is equipped with ABS as a standard feature.
Perform an emergency stop in situations that require such.
Steering is still responsive. You can still avoid any obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.
Pulsation of the brake pedal and sounds from the hydraulic circuits indicate that ABS is in its active mode.

**Objects in the area around the pedals**

**WARNING**
Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of an accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.

**Driving in wet conditions**
When roads are wet, salted, or in heavy rain, gently press the brake pedal every few miles. Ensure that this action does not endanger other traffic.
The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.
In this way braking efficiency will be available when you need it.

Hills

**General information**
Drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear that requires least braking effort. Otherwise, the brakes may overheat and reduce brake efficiency.
You can increase the engine's braking effect by shifting down, going all the way to first gear, if needed.

**Safety information**

**WARNING**
Light but consistent brake pressure can lead to high temperatures, brakes wearing out and possibly even brake failure. There is a risk of an accident. Avoid placing excessive stress on the brake system.

**WARNING**
In idle state or with the engine switched off, safety-relevant functions, for instance engine braking effect, braking force boost and steering assistance, are restricted or not available at all. There is a risk of an accident. Do not drive in idle state or with the engine switched off.

**Brake disc corrosion**
Corrosion on the brake discs and contamination on the brake pads are increased by the following circumstances:

- Low mileage.
- Extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all.
- Infrequent use of the brakes.
- Aggressive, acidic, or alkaline cleaning agents.

Corrosion buildup on the brake discs will cause a pulsating effect on the brakes in their response - generally this cannot be corrected.
Condensation water under the parked vehicle

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops and collects underneath the vehicle.

Ground clearance

NOTE
If ground clearance is insufficient, there might be contact with the front or rear spoiler, for instance when driving over curbs or entering into underground vehicle parking garages. There is a risk of damage to property. Ensure that there is sufficient ground clearance available.

REAR LUGGAGE RACK

General information
Installation only possible with rear luggage rack preparation.
Rear racks are available as special accessories.

Securing

COOPER

The fixing points, arrow 1, and the socket, arrow 2, are located below the covers in the bumper.
Remove the covers before installing the rear luggage rack.

Loading
Because rear luggage racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on vehicle handling and steering response.
Therefore, note the following when loading and driving:

▷ Do not exceed the approved axle load and the approved gross vehicle weight.
▷ Drive smoothly. Avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers. Take corners gently.

Power consumption
Before starting to drive, check the function of the rear luggage rack lights.
The rear luggage rack lights must not consume more than:

▷ Turn signals: 42 watts per side.
▷ Rear lights: 50 watts per side.
▷ Brake lights: 84 watts in total.
▷ Rear fog lights: 42 watts in total.
▷ Backup light: 42 watts in total.
DRIVING ON RACETRACKS

Higher mechanical and thermal loads during racetrack operation lead to increased wear. This wear is not covered by the warranty. The vehicle is not designed for use in motor sports competition.
SAVING FUEL

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS
This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

GENERAL INFORMATION
The vehicle contains advanced technologies for the reduction of fuel consumption and emission values.
Fuel consumption depends on a number of different factors.
The implementation of certain measures, driving style and regular maintenance can influence fuel consumption and environmental impact.

REMOVE UNNECESSARY CARGO
Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

REMOVE ATTACHED PARTS FOLLOWING USE
Remove rear luggage racks which are no longer required following use.
Attached parts on the vehicle impair the aerodynamics and increase the fuel consumption.

CLOSING THE WINDOWS
Open windows increase air resistance and therefore lead to greater fuel consumption.

TIRES
General information
Tires can affect fuel consumption in various ways, for instance tire size may influence fuel consumption.

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly
Check and, if needed, correct the tire inflation pressure at least twice a month and before starting on a long trip.
Low tire inflation pressure increases rolling resistance and thus raises fuel consumption and tire wear.

DRIVE AWAY WITHOUT DELAY
Do not wait for the engine to warm-up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving right away, but at moderate engine speeds.
This is the fastest way for the cold engine to reach its operating temperature.

LOOK WELL AHEAD WHEN DRIVING
Driving smoothly and proactively reduces fuel consumption.
Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
By maintaining a suitable distance to the vehicle driving ahead of you.

**AVOID HIGH ENGINE SPEEDS**
Driving at low engine speeds lowers fuel consumption and reduces wear.
If necessary, observe the vehicle's gear shift indicator, refer to page 100.

**USE COASTING CONDITIONS**
When approaching a red light, take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle coast to a halt.
For going downhill take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle roll.
The flow of fuel is interrupted while coasting.

**SWITCH OFF THE ENGINE DURING LONGER STOPS**

**Switching off the engine**
Switch off the engine during longer stops, for instance at traffic lights, railroad crossings or in traffic congestion.

**Auto Start/Stop function**
The Auto Start/Stop function of the vehicle automatically switches off the engine during a stop.
If the engine is switched off and then restarted rather than leaving the engine running constantly, fuel consumption and emissions are reduced. Savings can begin within a few seconds of switching off the engine.
In addition, fuel consumption is also determined by other factors, such as driving style, road conditions, maintenance or environmental factors.

**SWITCH OFF ANY FUNCTIONS THAT ARE NOT CURRENTLY NEEDED**
Functions such as seat heating and the rear window defroster require a lot of energy and consume additional fuel, especially in city and stop-and-go traffic.
Switch off these functions if they are not needed.

**HAVE MAINTENANCE CARRIED OUT**
Have the vehicle maintained regularly to achieve optimal vehicle efficiency and service life.
MINI recommends that maintenance work be performed by a MINI service center.
Also note the MINI maintenance systems, refer to page 229.

**GREEN MODE**

**Concept**
GREEN Mode supports a driving style that saves on fuel consumption. For this purpose, the engine control and comfort features, for instance the climate control output, are adjusted.
For Steptronic transmission:
Under certain conditions the engine is automatically decoupled from the transmission in the D selector lever position. The vehicle continues traveling with the engine idling to reduce fuel consumption. The D selector lever position remains engaged.
In addition, context-sensitive instructions are displayed to assist with an optimized fuel consumption driving style.
The achieved extended range is displayed in the instrument cluster as bonus range.
General information
The system includes the following MINIMALISM functions and MINIMALISM displays:
▷ GREEN bonus range, refer to page 191.
▷ GREEN tip, driving instruction, refer to page 192.
▷ GREEN climate control, refer to page 191.
▷ MINIMALISM analyzer, refer to page 194.
▷ Coasting driving condition, refer to page 193.

Activating GREEN Mode
Press the MINI Driving Modes switch downward until GREEN is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Configuring GREEN
Via MINI Driving Modes switch
1. Activating GREEN Mode.
2. "Configure GREEN"
3. Select the desired setting.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. ☓ "Settings"
2. "GREEN Mode"
3. Select the desired setting.
Or
1. ☓ "Settings"
2. "Driving mode"
3. "Configure GREEN"
4. Select the desired setting.

Activating/deactivating the functions
The following functions can be activated/deactivated:
▷ "GREEN speed warning"

"GREEN climate control"
Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

GREEN Limit
▷ Activate the GREEN Limit:
"GREEN speed warning":
A GREEN tip is displayed if the speed of the set GREEN Limit is exceeded.
▷ Setting the speed for the GREEN Limit:
"Tip at:"
Select the desired speed.

GREEN climate control
Climate control is set to be fuel-efficient.
That is, it is possible to deviate slightly from the set temperature or to heat or cool the car’s interior more slowly, to economize on fuel consumption.
The power output to the seat heater and exterior mirror is reduced.

GREEN potential savings
Shows potential savings with the current settings in percentages.

Display in the instrument cluster
GREEN bonus range
A modified driving style helps you extend your driving range.
This may be displayed as the bonus range in the instrument cluster.
The bonus range is shown in the range display.
The bonus range is automatically reset every time the vehicle is refueled.
▷ Green display: efficient driving style.
▷ Gray display: modify driving style, for instance by backing off the accelerator pedal.
Efficiency display

A bar display in the instrument cluster indicates your current driving efficiency.

Mark in the left area, arrow 1: display for energy recovered by coasting or when braking.

Mark in the right area, arrow 2: display when accelerating.

The efficiency of your driving style is shown by the position of the mark:

▷ Mark inside the green range: efficient driving style.
▷ Mark outside the green range: modify driving style, for example by backing off the accelerator.

GREEN tip, driving instruction

The GREEN tip indicates that your driving style can be modified to be more fuel efficient, for example by backing off the accelerator.

GREEN tip, symbols

An additional symbol and text instructions are displayed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Measure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>For an efficient driving style, look well ahead when driving, accelerate conservatively, and delay accelerating.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>Reduce speed to the selected GREEN speed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>Steptronic transmission: Switch from M/S to D and avoid manual shift interventions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>Manual transmission: Follow the shift instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>Manual transmission: Engage neutral for an engine stop.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Indications on the Control Display

Displaying MINIMALISM info

The current efficiency of the functions in GREEN Mode can be displayed on the Control Display.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "MINIMALISM"
3. "MINIMALISM info"

Information is shown on the following functions:

▷ Auto Start/Stop function.
▷ Energy recovery.
▷ Climate control output.
▷ Coasting.

Displaying GREEN tips

Driving instruction and an additional symbol are displayed.
Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

**Coasting**

**Concept**
The function helps to conserve fuel.
To do this, under certain conditions the engine is automatically decoupled from the transmission when selector lever position D is set. The vehicle continues traveling with the engine idling to reduce fuel consumption. Selector lever position D remains engaged.
This driving condition is referred to as coasting.
As soon as you step on the brake or accelerator pedal, the engine is automatically coupled again.

**General information**
Coasting is a component of the GREEN driving mode.
Coasting is automatically activated when the GREEN driving mode is called via the MINI Driving Modes switch, refer to page 139.
A proactive driving style helps the driver to use the function often and supports the fuel-conserving effect of coasting.

**Functional requirements**
The function is available in the speed range from approx. 15 mph/25 km/h up to 100 mph/160 km/h.
- Accelerator pedal and brake pedal are not operated.
- The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- Engine and transmission are at operating temperature.
- With a camera in the area of the interior mirror: the system does not detect any vehicles ahead of you.

- With the route-ahead assistant: the system does not detect any obstructive traffic situations or routes.

**Operation via shift paddles**

**Concept**
Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the coasting mode can be influenced with the shift paddles.

**Activating/deactivating coasting via shift paddles**
1. Shift to the highest gear by pulling the right shift paddle.
2. To activate coasting mode, actuate the right shift paddle again.
To deactivate, actuate the left shift paddle.

**Display**

**Display in the instrument cluster**
The bar display below the tachometer is filled in green and the mark appears at the zero point. The tachometer shows the idle speed.

**Indications on the Control Display**
The coasting driving condition is displayed in MINIMALISM Info while driving.
The distance traveled in the coasting driving condition is indicated by a counter.
Color code green, arrow 1: distance traveled in the coasting driving condition. Symbol, arrow 2: coasting driving condition.

Displaying MINIMALISM info
1. "Vehicle info"
2. "MINIMALISM"
3. "MINIMALISM info"

System limits
The function is not available if one of the following conditions applies:

▷ DSC OFF and TRACTION are activated.
▷ Cruise control is activated.
▷ If driving in the dynamic limit range.
▷ If driving on steep uphill or downhill grades.
▷ The battery charge state is temporarily too low.
▷ The vehicle electrical system is drawing excessive current.

MINIMALISM analyzer

Concept
The function helps develop an especially efficient driving style and to conserve fuel.

For this purpose, the driving style is analyzed. The assessment is done in various categories and is displayed on the Control Display.

This display will help you adjust your driving style and save some fuel.

The last 15 minutes of a trip are evaluated.

The range of the vehicle can be extended by adopting an efficient driving style. This gain in range is displayed as a bonus range in the instrument cluster and on the Control Display.

Functional requirement
This function is available in GREEN Mode.

Calling up MINIMALISM Analyser

Via MINI Driving Modes switch
1. Activating GREEN Mode.
2. "MINIMALISM"
3. Select the symbol.

Display on the Control Display

The display of the MINIMALISM analyzer consists of a fish in a water glass riding along on the roof of a MINI and a table of values.

The fish and the movements of the water in the bowl, arrow 1, symbolize the efficiency of the driving style.

The more efficient the driving style, the less the water sloshes around in the bowl and the better is the fish’s mood. If the driving style is inefficient, the water oscillates, the fish’s mood worsens, and a reduced number of stars is displayed.

The table of values, arrow 2, contains stars and evaluates the driving style in different categories. The more efficient the driving style, the more stars are displayed in the table.

The bonus range, arrow 3, achieved by a driving style that minimizes fuel consumption is
displayed below the table of values. The more efficient the driving style, the faster the bonus range increases.

To assist with an efficient driving style, GREEN tips are displayed while driving.

Tips for an energy-saving driving style, Saving fuel, refer to page 189.
MOVE ME.
VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

GENERAL INFORMATION

Follow the fuel recommendation, refer to page 200, prior to refueling.

SAFETY INFORMATION

NOTE
With a driving range of less than 30 miles/50 km the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of damage to property. Refuel promptly.

FUEL CAP

Opening
1. Grasp the fuel filler flap at the rear edge and open it.
2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.
3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.
Closing

**WARNING**
The retaining strap of the fuel cap can be jammed and crushed during closing. The cap cannot be correctly closed. Fuel or fuel vapors can escape. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Pay attention that the retaining strap is not jammed or crushed when closing the cap.

1. Fit the cap and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.
2. Close the fuel filler flap.

**Manually unlocking fuel filler flap**
E.g., in the event of an electrical malfunction. Have fuel filler flap unlocked by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

**FOLLOW THE FOLLOWING WHEN REFUELING**

**General information**
When refueling, insert the filler nozzle completely into the filler pipe. Lifting up the fuel pump nozzle during refueling causes:

- Premature switching off.
- Reduced return of the fuel vapors.

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Follow safety regulations posted at the gas station.

**Safety information**

**NOTE**
Fuels are toxic and aggressive. Overfilling of the fuel tank can damage the fuel system. Painted surfaces may be damaged by contact with fuel. Escaping fuel can harm the environ-
FUEL

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

FUEL RECOMMENDATION

General information
Depending on the region, many gas stations sell fuel that has been customized to winter or summer conditions. Fuel that is available in winter, for instance helps make a cold start easier.

Gasoline

General information
For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.

Fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 25 %, i.e. E10 or E25, may be used for refueling.

Ethanol should meet the following quality standards:

US: ASTM 4806–xx
CAN: CGSB-3.511–xx
xx: comply with the current standard in each case.

Safety information

NOTE
Do not press the Start/Stop button after refueling with the wrong fuel. Furthermore, the catalytic converter is permanently damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not refuel or add the following in the case of gasoline engines:

▷ Leaded gasoline.
▷ Metallic additives, for instance manganese or iron.

Do not press the Start/Stop button after refueling with the wrong fuel. Contact a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

NOTE
Incorrect fuels can damage the fuel system and the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use fuels with a higher percentage of ethanol than recommended. Do not refuel with fuels containing methanol, e.g. M5 to M100.

NOTE
Fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality can compromise engine function or cause engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not fill with fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality.

CAUTION
The use of poor-quality fuels may result in harmful engine deposits or damage. Additionally, problems relating to drivability, starting and stalling, especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude, may occur.
If drivability problems are encountered, we recommend switching to a high quality gasoline brand and a higher octane grade — AKI number — for a few tank fills. To avoid harmful engine deposits, it is highly recommended to purchase gasoline from Top Tier retailers.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may result in the need for unscheduled maintenance.

**Recommended fuel grade**

MINI recommends AKI 91.

John Cooper Works:

MINI recommends AKI 93.

Refuel with this gasoline to achieve the rated performance and consumption values.

**Minimum fuel grade**

MINI recommends AKI 89.

John Cooper Works:

MINI recommends AKI 91.

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high external temperatures. This has no effect on the engine life.
VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

TIRE INFLATION PRESSURE

General information

The tire characteristics and tire inflation pressure influence the following:

▷ The service life of the tires.
▷ Road safety.
▷ Driving comfort.
▷ Fuel consumption.

Safety information

WARNING

A tire with too little or no tire inflation pressure may heat up significantly and sustain damage. This will have a negative impact on aspects of handling, such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of an accident. Regularly check the tire inflation pressure, and correct it as needed, for instance twice a month and before a long trip.

Tire inflation pressure specifications

In the tire inflation pressure table

The tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 203, contains all tire inflation pressure specifications for the specified tire sizes at the ambient temperature. The tire inflation pressure values apply to tire sizes approved by the manufacturer of the vehicle for the vehicle type.

To identify the correct tire inflation pressure, please note the following:

▷ Tire sizes of your vehicle.
▷ Maximum permitted driving speed.

Checking the tire inflation pressure

General information

Tires heat up while driving. The tire inflation pressure increases with the tire temperature. Tires have a natural, consistent loss of tire inflation pressure.

The displays of inflation devices may under-read by up to 0.1 bar/2 psi.

Checking using tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire inflation pressure table

The tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire inflation pressure table only relate to cold tires or tires at the same temperature as the ambient temperature.

Only check the tire inflation pressure levels when the tires are cold, i.e.:

▷ Driving range of max. 1.25 miles/2 km has not been exceeded.
If the vehicle has not moved again for at least 2 hours after a trip.

1. Determine, refer to page 202, the intended tire inflation pressure levels for the mounted tires.

2. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, using a pressure gage, for example.

3. Correct the tire inflation pressure if the current tire inflation pressure value deviates from the specified value.

4. Check whether all valve caps are screwed onto the tire valves.

After correcting the tire inflation pressure

For run-flat tires: reinitialize run-flat tires.
For the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM: reset the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM.

Checking the tire inflation pressure of the emergency wheel

Also check the tire inflation pressure of the emergency wheel in the cargo area regularly, and correct it as needed.

Tire inflation pressures up to 100 mph/160 km/h

For speeds of up to 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 203, and adjust as necessary.

These pressure values can also be found on the tire inflation pressure label on the driver’s door pillar.

Do not exceed a speed of 100 mph/160 km/h.

Tire inflation pressure values up to 100 mph/160 km/h

COOPER

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tire size</th>
<th>Pressure specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specifications in bar/PSI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>175/60 R 16 86 H M+S XL RSC</td>
<td>2.5 / 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>175/65 R 15 84 H M+S A/S Std</td>
<td>2.3 / 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>175/65 R 15 88 H M+S XL Std</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>175/65 R 15 84 rear XL Std</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>185/50 R 17 86 H M+S XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195/55 R 16 87 H M+S RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195/55 R 16 87 V M+S A/S RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195/55 R 16 87 W RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 V M+S XL A/S RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 V M+S XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency wheel T 115/70 R 15 90 M</td>
<td>Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.2 / 60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### COOPER S

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tire size</th>
<th>Pressure specifications in bar/PSI</th>
<th>Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>195/55 R 16 87 H M+S RSC</td>
<td>2.6 / 38</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195/55 R 16 87 V M +S A/S RSC</td>
<td>2.4 / 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195/55 R 16 87 W RSC</td>
<td>2.9 / 42</td>
<td>2.7 / 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>175/60 R 16 86 H M+S XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>185/50 R 17 86 H M+S XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL A/S RSC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### JOHN COOPER WORKS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tire size</th>
<th>Pressure specifications in bar/PSI</th>
<th>Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>185/50 R 17 86 H M+S XL RSC</td>
<td>2.9 / 42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC</td>
<td>2.7 / 39</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL A/S RSC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Tire inflation pressures at max. speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

**WARNING**

In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please observe, and, if necessary, adjust tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h from the relevant table on the following pages. Otherwise, tire damage and accidents could occur.

For speeds over 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 205, and adjust as necessary.
## Tire inflation pressure values over 100 mph/160 km/h

### COOPER

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tire size</th>
<th>Pressure specifications in bar/PSI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>175/65 R 15 84 H M+S A/S Std</td>
<td>2.8 / 41 2.6 / 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>175/65 R 15 88 H M+S XL Std</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>175/65 R 15 88 rear XL Std</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>175/60 R 16 86 H M+S XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>185/50 R 17 86 H M+S XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195/55 R 16 87 H M+S RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195/55 R 16 87 V M+S A/S RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195/55 R 16 87 W RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 V M+S XL A/S RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 V M+S XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Emergency wheel T 115/70 R 15 90 M  
Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h  
4.2 / 60

### COOPER S

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tire size</th>
<th>Pressure specifications in bar/PSI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>195/55 R 16 87 H M+S RSC</td>
<td>2.8 / 41 2.6 / 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195/55 R 16 87 V M+S A/S RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195/55 R 16 87 W RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>175/60 R 16 86 H M+S XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>185/50 R 17 86 H M+S XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 V M+S XL A/S RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 V M+S XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tire size</th>
<th>Pressure specifications in bar/PSI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>195/55 R 16 87 H M+S RSC</td>
<td>2.8 / 41 2.6 / 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195/55 R 16 87 V M+S A/S RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195/55 R 16 87 W RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>175/60 R 16 86 H M+S XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>185/50 R 17 86 H M+S XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 V M+S XL A/S RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 V M+S XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
On 3-door models: JOHN COOPER WORKS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tire size</th>
<th>Pressure specifications in bar/PSI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>185/50 R 17 86 H M+S XL RSC</td>
<td>3.2 / 46 3.0 / 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 V M+S XL A/S RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 V M+S XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC</td>
<td>3.4 / 49 3.2 / 46</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TIRE IDENTIFICATION MARKS**

**Tire size**
205/45 R 17 84 V
205: nominal width in mm
45: aspect ratio in %
R: radial tire code
17: rim diameter in inches
84: load rating, not for ZR tires
V: speed rating, before the R on ZR tires

**Maximum tire load**
Maximum tire load is the maximum permissible weight for which the tire is approved.
Locate the maximum tire load on the tire sidewall and the Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR – on the certification label on the driver’s door pillar. Divide the tire load by 1.1. It must be greater than one-half of the vehicle’s Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR. Note, front vs. rear GAWR and tire loads, respectively.

**Speed letter**
Q = up to 100 mph/160 km/h
R = 106 mph/170 km/h
S = up to 112 mph/180 km/h
T = up to 118 mph/190 km/h
H = up to 131 mph/210 km/h
V = up to 150 mph/240 km/h
W = up to 167 mph/270 km/h
Y = up to 186 mph/300 km/h

**Tire Identification Number**
DOT code: DOT xxxx xxx 3817
xxxx: manufacturer code for the tire brand
xxx: tire size and tire design
3817: tire age
Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

**Tire age**

**Recommendation**
Regardless of the tire tread, replace tires at least every 6 years.

**Manufacture date**
You can find the manufacture date of the tire on the tire's sidewall.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Designation</th>
<th>Manufacture date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DOT ... 3817</td>
<td>38th week, 2017</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Uniform Tire Quality Grading**
Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.
E.g.: Treadwear 200; Traction AA; Temperature A
DOT Quality Grades

Treadwear
Traction AA A B C
Temperature A B C
All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear
The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. E.g., a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half, 1 g, times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction
The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.
Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.
The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature
The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger vehicle tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades Band A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

WARNING
The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

RSC – Run-flat tires
Run-flat tires, refer to page 210, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the sidewall.

M+S
Winter and all-season tires with better cold weather performance than summer tires.

TIRE TREAD

Summer tires
Do not drive with a tire tread of less than 0.12 in/3 mm, otherwise there is an increased risk of hydroplaning.

Winter tires
Do not drive with a tire tread of less than 0.16 in/4 mm, as such tires are less suitable for winter operation.
Minimum tread depth

Wear indicators are distributed around the tire’s circumference and have the legally required minimum height of 0.063 inches/1.6 mm.

The positions of the wear indicators are marked on the tire sidewall with TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

TIRE DAMAGE

General information

Inspect your tires regularly for damage, foreign objects lodged in the tread, and tread wear.

Driving over rough or damaged road surfaces, as well as debris, curbs and other obstacles can cause serious damage to wheels, tires and suspension parts. This is more likely to occur with low-profile tires, which provide less cushioning between the wheel and the road. Be careful to avoid road hazards and reduce your speed, especially if your vehicle is equipped with low-profile tires.

Indications of tire damage or other vehicle malfunctions:

▷ Unusual vibrations.
▷ Unusual tire or running noises.
▷ Unusual handling such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.

Damage can be caused by the following situations, for instance:

▷ Driving over curbs.
▷ Road damage.

▷ Tire inflation pressure too low.
▷ Vehicle overloading.
▷ Incorrect tire storage.

Safety information

WARNING

Damaged tires can lose tire inflation pressure, which can lead to loss of vehicle control. There is a risk of an accident. If tire damage is suspected while driving, immediately reduce speed and stop. Have wheels and tires checked. For this purpose, drive carefully to the nearest dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Have vehicle towed or transported as needed. Do not repair damaged tires, but have them replaced. ◄

WARNING

Tires can become damaged by driving over obstacles, e.g., curbs or road damage, at high speed. Larger wheels have a smaller tire cross-section. The smaller the tire cross-section, the higher the risk of tire damage. There is a danger of accidents and property damage. If possible, drive around obstacles, or drive over them slowly and carefully. ◄

CHANGING WHEELS AND TIRES

Mounting and wheel balancing

Have mounting and wheel balancing carried out by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Wheel and tire combination

General information

You can ask the dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop
about the correct wheel/tire combination and wheel rim versions for the vehicle.

Safety information

WARNING

Wheels and tires which are not suitable for your vehicle can damage parts of the vehicle, for instance due to contact with the body due to tolerances despite the same official size rating. There is a risk of an accident. The manufacturer of your vehicle strongly suggests that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for your vehicle type.

New tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Retreaded tires

WARNING

Retreaded tires can have different tire casing structures. With advanced age the service life can be limited. There is a risk of an accident. The manufacturer of your vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

The manufacturer of your vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

Winter tires

Winter tires are recommended for operating on winter roads.

Although so-called all-season M+S tires provide better winter traction than summer tires, they usually do not provide the same level of performance as winter tires.

Maximum speed of winter tires

If the maximum speed of the vehicle is higher than the permissible speed for the winter tires, then attach a label showing the permissible maximum speed in the field of view. The label is available from a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

With winter tires mounted, observe and do not exceed the permissible maximum speed.

Run-flat tires

If you are already using run-flat tires, for your own safety you should replace them only with the same kind. No spare tire is available in the case of a flat tire. Further information is available from a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
Rotating wheels between axles
Different wear patterns can occur on the front and rear axles depending on individual driving conditions. The tires can be rotated in pairs between the axles to achieve even wear. Further information is available from a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. After rotating, check the tire pressure and correct, if needed.

Storing tires

Air pressure
Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the side wall of the tire.

Storage
Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry and dark place.
Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease, and solvents.
Do not leave tires in plastic bags.
Remove dirt from wheels or tires.

RUN-FLAT TIRES

Concept
Run-flat tires permit continued driving under restricted conditions even in the event of a complete loss of tire inflation pressure.

General information
The wheels are composed of tires that are self-supporting to a limited degree.
The support of the sidewall allows the tire to remain drivable to a restricted degree in the event of a tire inflation pressure loss.
Follow the instructions for continued driving with a flat tire.

Safety information

WARNING
Your vehicle handles differently with a run-flat with no or low inflation pressure; for instance, your lane stability when braking is reduced, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of an accident.
Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h. ◄

Label

The tires are marked on the tire sidewall with RSC Run-flat System Component.

REPAIRING A FLAT TIRE

Safety measures
▷ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
▷ Switch on the hazard warning system.
▷ Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.
▷ Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
▷ Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
▷ If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.
MOBILITY SYSTEM

Concept
With the Mobility System, minor tire damage can be sealed temporarily to enable continued travel. To accomplish this, sealant is pumped into the tires, which seals the damage from the inside.

General information
▷ Follow the instructions on using the Mobility System found on the compressor and sealant container.
▷ Use of the Mobility System may be ineffective if the tire puncture measures approx. 1/8 inches/4 mm or more.
▷ Contact a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop if the tire cannot be made drivable.
▷ If possible, do not remove foreign bodies that have penetrated the tire. Only remove foreign objects if they are visibly protruding from the tire.
▷ Pull the speed limit sticker off the sealant container and apply it to the steering wheel.
▷ The use of a sealant can damage the TPM wheel electronics. In this case, have the TPM wheel electronics replaced at the next opportunity.
▷ The compressor can be used to check the tire inflation pressure.

Overview
Storage
The Mobility System is located under the cargo floor panel.

Sealant container
▷ Sealant container, arrow 1.
▷ Filling hose, arrow 2.
Observe use-by date on the sealant container.

Compressor
1 Sealant container unlocking
2 Holder for sealant container
3 Inflation pressure dial
4 Reduce inflation pressure
5 On/off switch
6 Compressor
7 Connector/cable for socket
8 Connection hose

Safety measures
▷ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
▷ Switch on the hazard warning system.
▷ Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.
Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.

Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.

If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

Filling the tire with sealant

Safety information

DANGER
If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

NOTE
The compressor can overheat during extended operation. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not run the compressor for more than 10 minutes.

Filling

1. Shake the sealant container.

2. Pull filling hose completely out of the cover of the sealant container. Do not kink the hose.

3. Slide the sealant container into the holder on the compressor housing, ensuring that it engages audibly.

4. Screw the filling hose of the sealant container onto the tire valve of the nonworking wheel.
5. With the compressor switched off, insert the plug into the power socket inside the vehicle.

6. With the ignition switched on or the engine running, switch on the compressor.

Let the compressor run for max. 10 minutes to fill the tire with sealant and achieve a tire inflation pressure of approx. 2.5 bar.

While the tire is being filled with sealant, the tire inflation pressure may sporadically reach approx. 5 bar. Do not switch off the compressor at this point.

Checking and adjusting the tire inflation pressure

Checking

1. Switch off the compressor.
2. Read the tire inflation pressure on the tire pressure gage.

To continue the trip, a tire inflation pressure of at least 2 bar must be reached.

Removing and stowing the sealant container

1. Unscrew the filling hose of the sealant container from the tire valve.
2. Press the red unlocking device.
3. Remove the sealant container from the compressor.
4. Wrap and store the sealant container in suitable material to avoid dirtying the cargo area.

Minimum tire inflation pressure is not reached

1. Pull the connector out of the power socket inside the vehicle.
2. Drive 33 ft/10 m forward and back to distribute the sealant in the tire.
3. Screw the connection hose of the compressor directly onto the tire valve stem.
4. Insert the connector into the power socket inside the vehicle.

5. With the ignition switched on or the engine running, switch on the compressor.
If a tire inflation pressure of at least 2 bar cannot be reached, contact your dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

If a tire inflation pressure of at least 2 bar is reached, see Minimum tire inflation pressure is reached.

6. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
7. Pull the connector out of the power socket inside the vehicle.
8. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.

Minimum tire inflation pressure is reached
1. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
2. Pull the connector out of the power socket inside the vehicle.
3. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.
4. Immediately drive approx. 5 miles/10 km to ensure that the sealant is evenly distributed in the tire.

Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
If possible, do not drive at speeds less than 12 mph/20 km/h.

Adjustment
1. Stop at a suitable location.
2. Screw the connection hose of the compressor directly onto the tire valve stem.
3. Insert the connector into the power socket inside the vehicle.
4. Correct the tire inflation pressure to at least 2.0 bar.
   - Increase tire inflation pressure: with the ignition switched on or the engine running, switch on the compressor.
   - Reduce tire inflation pressure: press the button on the compressor.
5. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
6. Pull the connector out of the power socket inside the vehicle.
7. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.

Continuing the trip
Do not exceed the maximum permissible speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
Reinitialize the run-flat tires, refer to page 126.
Reinitialize the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM, refer to page 121.
Replace the nonworking tire and the sealant container of the Mobility System at the next opportunity.

SNOW CHAINS

Safety information

⚠️ WARNING
With the mounting of snow chains on unsuitable tires, the snow chains can come into contact with vehicle parts. There is a risk of ac-
cidents or risk of damage to property. Only mount snow chains on tires that are designated by their manufacturer as suitable for the use of snow chains.

⚠️ WARNING
Insufficiently tight snow chains may damage tires and vehicle components. There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the snow chains are always sufficiently tight. Re-tighten as needed according to the snow chain manufacturer’s instructions.

Fine-link snow chains
The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends use of fine-link snow chains. Certain types of fine-link snow chains have been tested by the manufacturer of the vehicle and recommended as road-safe and suitable.

Information regarding suitable snow chains is available from a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Use
Use only in pairs on the front wheels, equipped with the tires of the following size:

- 175/65 R 15.
- 175/60 R 16.
- 185/50 R 17.

John Cooper Works:
185/50 R 17.

Follow the snow chain manufacturer’s instructions.

Do not initialize the run-flat tires after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

Do not reset the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

When driving with snow chains, briefly activate Dynamic Traction Control DTC, if needed.

Maximum speed with snow chains
Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h when using snow chains.

CHANGING WHEELS/TIRES

General information
When using run-flat tires or a flat tire kit, a wheel does not always need to be changed immediately when there is a loss of tire inflation pressure due to a flat tire.

If needed, the tools for changing wheels are available as accessories from a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information
⚠️ DANGER
The vehicle jack is only provided for short-term lifting of the vehicle for wheel changes. Even if all safety measures are observed, there is a risk of the raised vehicle falling, if the vehicle jack tilts over. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. If the vehicle is raised, do not lie under the vehicle and do not start the engine.

⚠️ DANGER
Supports such as wooden blocks under the vehicle jack may prevent it from achieving its load capacity due to its restricted height. The load capacity of the wooden blocks may be exceeded, causing the vehicle to tip over. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not place supports under the vehicle jack.

⚠️ WARNING
The jack, issued by the vehicle manufacturer, is provided in order to perform a wheel change in the event of a breakdown. The jack is not designed for frequent use; for example, changing from summer to winter tires. Using the jack frequently may cause it to become...
jammed or damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only use the jack to attach an emergency or spare wheel in the event of a breakdown.

**WARNING**
On soft, uneven or slippery ground, for example snow, ice, tiles, etc., the vehicle jack can slip away. There is a risk of injury. If possible, change the wheel on a flat, solid, and slip-resistant surface.

**WARNING**
The vehicle jack is optimized for lifting the vehicle and for the jacking points on the vehicle only. There is a risk of injury. Do not lift any other vehicle or cargo using the vehicle jack.

**WARNING**
If the vehicle jack is not inserted into the jacking point provided for this purpose, the vehicle may be damaged or the vehicle jack may slip when it is being cranked up. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. When cranking up the vehicle jack, ensure that it is inserted in the jacking point next to the wheel housing.

**WARNING**
A vehicle that is raised on a vehicle jack may fall off of the jack if lateral forces are exerted on it. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. While the vehicle is raised, do not exert lateral forces on the vehicle or pull abruptly on the vehicle. Have a stuck wheel removed by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

**Securing the vehicle against rolling**

**General information**
The vehicle manufacturer recommends to additionally secure the vehicle against rolling away when changing a wheel.

**On a level surface**
Place wheel chocks or other suitable objects in front and behind the wheel that is diagonal to the wheel to be changed.

**On a slight downhill gradient**
If you need to change a wheel on a slight downhill grade, place chocks and other suitable objects, for instance a rock, under the wheels of both the front and rear axles against the rolling direction.

**Lug bolt lock**

**Concept**
The wheel lug bolts have a special coding. The lug bolts can only be released with the adapter which matches the coding.

**Overview**
The adapter of the lug bolt lock is located in the onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 231.
▷ Lug bolt, arrow 1.
▷ Adapter, arrow 2.

**Unscrewing**
1. Attach the adapter to the lug bolt.
2. Unscrew the lug bolt.
3. Remove the adapter after unscrewing the lug bolt.

**Screwing on**
1. Attach the adapter to the lug bolt. If necessary, turn the adapter until it fits on the lug bolt.
2. Screw on the lug bolt. The tightening torque is 140 Nm.
3. Remove the adapter and stow it after screwing on the lug bolt.

**Preparing the vehicle**
▷ Park the vehicle on solid and non-slip ground at a safe distance from traffic.
▷ Switch on the hazard warning system.
▷ Set the parking brake.
▷ Engage a gear or move the selector lever to position P.
▷ As soon as permitted by the traffic flow, have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
▷ Depending on the equipment version, get tools and the emergency wheel from the vehicle.

▷ If necessary, set up a warning triangle or portable hazard warning light at an appropriate distance.
▷ Secure the vehicle additionally against rolling.
▷ Loosen the lug bolts a half turn.

**Jacking points for the vehicle jack**

The jacking points for the vehicle jack are located at the marked positions.

**Jacking up the vehicle**

⚠️ WARNING
Hands and fingers can be jammed when using the vehicle jack. There is a risk of injury. Comply with the described hand position and
do not change this position while using the vehicle jack.

1. Hold the vehicle jack with one hand, arrow 1, and grasp the vehicle jack crank or lever with your other hand, arrow 2.

2. Insert the vehicle jack into the rectangular recess of the jacking point closest to the wheel to be changed.

3. Extend the vehicle jack by turning the vehicle jack crank or lever clockwise.

4. Take your hand away from the vehicle jack as soon as the vehicle jack is under load and continue turning the vehicle jack crank or lever with one hand.

5. Make sure that the vehicle jack foot stands vertically and at a right angle beneath the jacking point.

6. Make sure that the vehicle jack foot stands vertically and perpendicularly beneath the jacking point after extending the vehicle jack.

7. Crank up the vehicle jack until the entire surface of the jack is in contact with the ground and the wheel in question is raised a maximum of 1.2 inches/3 cm off the ground.

**Mounting a wheel**

Mount one emergency wheel only, as required.

1. Unscrew the lug bolts.
2. Remove the wheel.
3. Put the new wheel or emergency wheel on and screw in at least two lug bolts in a crosswise pattern until hand-tight.

If non-original light-alloy wheels of the vehicle manufacturer are mounted, the accompanying lug bolts may have to be used as well.
4. Hand-tighten the remaining lug bolts and tighten all lug bolts well in a crosswise pattern.

5. Turn the vehicle jack crank counterclockwise to retract the vehicle jack and lower the vehicle.

6. Remove the vehicle jack and stow it securely.

After the wheel change
1. Tighten the lug bolts crosswise. The tightening torque is 101 lb ft/140 Nm.

2. Stow the nonworking wheel in the cargo area, if necessary.
   The nonworking wheel cannot be stored under the cargo floor panel because of its size.

3. Check tire inflation pressure at the next opportunity and correct as needed.

4. Reinitialize the run-flat tires.
   Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM.

5. Check to make sure the lug bolts are tight with a calibrated torque wrench.

6. Have the damaged tire replaced at the nearest dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

**WARNING**
The emergency wheel has particular dimensions. When driving with an emergency wheel, changed driving properties may occur, for instance reduced lane stability when braking, longer braking distance, and changed self-steering properties in the limit area. There is a risk of an accident. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Overview
The emergency wheel is housed in a well on the underbody of the vehicle. The screw connection of the emergency wheel is under the cargo floor panel, on the floor of the storage compartment for the onboard vehicle tool kit. The wheel change tools are under the cargo floor panel.

Removing the emergency wheel
1. Loosen the nut using the wheel wrench from the onboard vehicle tool kit.

2. Remove the retaining plate.

**EMERGENCY WHEEL**

**Concept**
In the event of a flat tire, the emergency wheel can be used in place of the wheel with the defective tire. The emergency wheel is only intended for temporary use until the defective tire/wheel has been replaced.

**General information**
Mount one emergency wheel only.
Also check the tire inflation pressure of the emergency wheel in the cargo area regularly, and correct it as needed.
3. Screw wheel lug wrench onto the thread and hold in place with one hand.

4. Unlock the locking hexagon of the emergency wheel well using the hexagon attached to retaining plate.

5. Lower the emergency wheel with the wheel wrench.

6. Unscrewing the wheel wrench

7. Pull out the well with emergency wheel under the vehicle toward the rear.

8. Remove the spacer and emergency wheel from the well.

9. Stow the well and spacer in the vehicle.

**Replacing the tires**
1. Have the damaged tire replaced.

2. Replace the emergency wheel with the new wheel.

**Installing the emergency wheel**
Have the emergency wheel installed back into the vehicle by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

IMPORTANT FEATURES IN THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT

1 Filler neck for washer fluid
2 Vehicle identification number
3 Oil filler neck
4 Jump-starting, positive terminal
5 Jump-starting, negative terminal
6 Coolant reservoir

HOOD

Safety information

**WARNING**

Improperly executed work in the engine compartment can damage vehicle components and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of personal and property damage. The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that, in the effort to avoid such risks, work in the engine compartment be performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
WARNING
The engine compartment accommodates moving components. Certain components in the engine compartment can also move with the vehicle switched off, for instance the radiator fan. There is a risk of injury. Do not reach into the area of moving parts. Keep articles of clothing and hair away from moving parts.◀

WARNING
There are protruding parts, for instance locking hook, on the inside of the hood. There is a risk of injury. If the hood is open, pay attention to protruding parts and keep clear of these areas.◀

WARNING
An incorrectly locked hood can open while driving and restrict visibility. There is a risk of an accident. Stop immediately and correctly close the hood.◀

WARNING
Body parts can be jammed when opening and closing the hood. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the hood is clear during opening and closing.◀

NOTE
Folded-away wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.◀

NOTE
When the hood is closed, it must engage on both sides. Pressing again can damage the hood. There is a risk of damage to property. Open the hood again and then close it energetically. Avoid pressing again.◀

Opening the hood
1. Pull lever, arrow 1.

Hood is unlocked.

2. After the lever is released, pull the lever again, arrow 2.
Hood can be opened.

Indicator/warning lights
When the hood is opened, a Check Control message is displayed.

Closing the hood
Let the hood fall from approx. 16 inches/40 cm, arrow.
The hood must engage on both sides.
ENGINE OIL

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS
This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

GENERAL INFORMATION
The engine oil consumption is dependent on your driving style and driving conditions. Therefore, regularly check the engine oil level after refueling by taking a detailed measurement.

The engine oil consumption can increase in the following situations, for example:
▷ Sporty driving style.
▷ Break-in of the engine.
▷ Idling of the engine.
▷ With use of engine oil types that are classified as not suitable.

Different Check Control messages appear, depending on the engine oil level.

SAFETY INFORMATION

NOTE
An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Immediately add engine oil.

NOTE
Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add too much engine oil. When too much engine oil is added, have the engine oil level corrected by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

ELECTRONIC OIL MEASUREMENT

General information
The electronic oil measurement has two measuring principles:
▷ Monitoring.
▷ Detailed measurement.

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a dynamic driving style, for instance when taking curves aggressively, regularly perform a detailed measurement.

Monitoring

Concept
The engine oil level is monitored electronically while driving and can be shown on the Control Display.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

Functional requirements
A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving.
Displaying the engine oil level
Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"
The engine oil level is displayed.

System limits
When making frequent short-distance trips or using a dynamic driving style, it may not be possible to calculate a measured value. In this case, the measured value for the last, sufficiently long trip is displayed.

Detailed measurement
Concept
The engine oil level is checked when the vehicle is stationary and displayed via a scale.
If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

General information
During the measurement, the idle speed is increased somewhat.

Functional requirements
▷ Vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
▷ Manual transmission: shift lever in neutral position, clutch and accelerator pedals not depressed.
▷ Steptronic transmission: selector lever in selector lever position N or P and accelerator pedal not depressed.
▷ Engine is running and is at operating temperature.

Performing a detailed measurement
Via the Central Information Display (CID):
1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Measure engine oil level"
4. "Start measurement"
The engine oil level is checked and displayed via a scale.

ADDING ENGINE OIL

General information
Only add engine oil when the message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The quantity to be added is indicated in the message displayed in the instrument cluster.
Only add suitable types of engine oil, refer to page 225.
Safely park the vehicle and switch off the ignition before adding engine oil.
Take care not to add too much engine oil.

Safety information
WARNING
Operating materials, for instance oils, greases, coolants, fuels, can contain harmful ingredients. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Follow the instructions on the containers. Avoid the contact of articles of clothing, skin or eyes with operating materials. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.

NOTE
An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Immediately add engine oil.
NOTE
Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add too much engine oil. When too much engine oil is added, have the engine oil level corrected by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Overview
The oil filler neck is located in the engine compartment, refer to page 221.

Adding engine oil
1. Open the hood, refer to page 221.
2. Turn the lid counterclockwise.
3. Add engine oil.
4. Close the cap.

ENGINE OIL TYPES TO ADD

General information
The engine oil quality is critical for the life of the engine.

Safety information
NOTE
Oil additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use oil additives.

NOTE
Incorrect engine oil can cause malfunctions in the engine or damage it. There is a risk of damage to property. When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has the correct oil rating.

Suitable engine oil types
Add engine oils that meet the following oil rating standards:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Rating</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gasoline engine</td>
<td>BMW Longlife-01 FE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BMW Longlife-14 FE+</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

More information about suitable engine oil ratings and viscosities of engine oils can be requested from a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Alternative engine oil types
If an engine oil suitable for continuous use is not available, up to 1 US quart/liter of an engine oil with the following oil rating can be added:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Rating</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gasoline engine</td>
<td>BMW Longlife-01.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>API SL, API SM, or API SN.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Viscosity grades
Gasoline engine:
When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has the viscosity grade SAE 0W-30 or SAE 0W-20. The suitable viscosity grade is indicated on a label in the engine compartment.

Viscosity class SAE 0W-20 is only suitable for particular engines.

More information about suitable engine oil ratings and viscosities of engine oils can be re-
quested from a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

ENGINE OIL CHANGE

NOTE

Engine oil that is not changed in timely fashion can cause increased engine wear and thus engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not exceed the service data indicated in the vehicle.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you have a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop change the engine oil.

MINI recommends
MINI Original Engine Oil.
COOLANT

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

GENERAL INFORMATION

Coolant consists of water and additives. Not all commercially available additives are suitable for the vehicle. Information about suitable additives is available from a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

SAFETY INFORMATION

WARNING
With the engine hot and the cooling system open, coolant can escape and lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury. Only open the cooling system with the engine cooled down.

WARNING
Additives are harmful and incorrect additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Do not allow additives to come into contact with skin, eyes or articles of clothing. Use suitable additives only.

COOLANT LEVEL

Overview
The coolant reservoir is in the engine compartment, refer to page 221.
Open the hood, refer to page 221.

Checking
There are yellow Min and Max marks in the coolant reservoir.

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.
3. Open the coolant reservoir lid.
4. The coolant level is correct if it lies between the minimum and maximum marks in the filler neck.
Adding
1. Let the engine cool.
2. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.
3. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified level; do not overfill.
4. Close the cap.
5. Have the cause of the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

DISPOSAL

Comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant and coolant additives.
MAINTENANCE

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

MINI MAINTENANCE SYSTEM

The maintenance system indicates required maintenance measures, and thereby provides support in maintaining road safety and the operational reliability of the vehicle.

In some cases, scopes and intervals may vary according to the country-specific version. Replacement work, spare parts, fuels and lubricants, and wear materials are calculated separately. Further information is available from a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

CONDITION BASED SERVICE CBS

Concept
Sensors and special algorithms take into account the driving conditions of the vehicle. CBS uses these to calculate the need for maintenance.

The system makes it possible to adapt the amount of maintenance corresponding to your user profile.

General information
Information on service requirements, refer to page 99, can be displayed on the Control Display.

Service data in the remote control
Information on the required maintenance is continuously stored in the remote control. The dealer’s service center can read this data out and suggest an optimized maintenance scope for the vehicle. Therefore, hand the service advisor the remote control with which the vehicle was driven most recently.

Storage periods
Storage periods during which the vehicle battery was disconnected are not taken into account.

If this occurs, have a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop update the time-dependent maintenance procedures, such as checking brake fluid and, if necessary, changing the engine oil and the microfilter/activated-charcoal filter.

SERVICE AND WARRANTY INFORMATION BOOKLET FOR US MODELS AND WARRANTY AND SERVICE GUIDE BOOKLET FOR CANADIAN MODELS

Please consult your Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on service requirements.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that maintenance and repair be performed by a
dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Records of regular maintenance and repair work should be retained.

**SOCKET FOR OBD ONBOARD DIAGNOSIS**

**Safety information**

⚠️ **NOTE**  
The socket for Onboard Diagnosis is an intricate component intended to be used in conjunction with specialized equipment to check the vehicle’s primary emissions system. Improper use of the socket for Onboard Diagnosis, or contact with the socket for Onboard Diagnosis for other than its intended purpose, can cause vehicle malfunctions and creates risks of personal and property damage. Given the foregoing, the manufacture of your vehicle strongly recommends that access to the socket for Onboard Diagnosis be limited to a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or other persons that have the specialized training and equipment for purposes of properly utilizing the socket for Onboard Diagnosis.

**Position**

There is an OBD socket on the driver's side for checking the primary components in the vehicle’s emissions.

**Emissions**

- The warning light lights up:  
  Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

- The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:  
  This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine. Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.
VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

ONBOARD VEHICLE TOOL KIT

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the onboard vehicle tool kit is located on the right side under the cargo floor panel or in a bag on the right side of the cargo area.

After use, secure the bag with the onboard vehicle tool kit on a lashing eye again.

WIPER BLADE REPLACEMENT

Safety information

NOTE

The window may sustain damage if the wiper falls onto it without the wiper blade installed. There is a risk of damage to property.

Replacing the wiper blades

1. To change the wiper blades, fold up the wiper arms.
2. Fold up and hold the wiper arm firmly.
3. Open the wiper blade lock, arrow.
4. Pull the wiper blade down out of the holder on the wiper arm, arrow 1.
5. Pull the wiper blade free from the holder of the wiper arm, arrow 2.

Hold the wiper firmly when changing the wiper blade. Do not fold or switch on the wiper without a wiper blade installed. ≤

NOTE

Folded-away wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood. ≤
6. Insert and latch a new wiper blade in reverse order.
7. Fold down the wiper arm.

LIGHT/BULB REPLACEMENT

General information

Lights and bulbs
Lights and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you have appropriate work performed by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop if you are unfamiliar with it or if it has not been described here.

A spare light box is available from a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Follow the safety information, refer to page 232.

Light-emitting diodes (LEDs)

Some items of equipment use light-emitting diodes installed behind a cover as a light source. These light-emitting diodes are related to conventional lasers and are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

Follow the safety information, refer to page 232.

Safety information

Lights and bulbs

WARNING
Bulbs can get hot during operation. Contact with the bulbs can cause burns. There is a risk of injury. Only change bulbs after they have cooled off. ▶

Headlight glass

Condensation can form on the inside of the external lights in cool or humid weather. When driving with the lights switched on, the condensation evaporates after a short time. The headlight glass does not need to be changed.

If despite driving with the headlights switched on, increasing humidity forms, for instance water droplets in the light, have the headlights checked.

Headlight setting

The headlight adjustments can be affected by changing lights and bulbs. After the headlight adjustment was changed, have it checked and, if necessary, corrected by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
Front halogen lights, bulb replacement

Overview

Halogen headlights

1. Low beams/high beams
2. Turn signal

Bug light

1. Parking lights
2. Daytime running lights
3. Fog lights

Low beams/high beams
Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 232.

Bulbs: H4
1. Open the hood, refer to page 222.
2. Turn the lid counterclockwise, arrow, and remove.
3. Pull off the connector.
4. Unclip spring clip, arrow, and fold down.
5. Remove the bulb from the headlight housing.
6. Insert the new bulb and install the cover in the reverse order.

Turn signal
Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 232.
Bulbs: PW24W
With white turn signal lights: PWY24W

1. Turn the steering wheel.
2. Turn the lid counterclockwise, arrow 1, and remove.
3. Unscrew the inner cover counterclockwise, and remove it.
4. Pull bulb holder out of the bulb housing; if needed, loosen it with small tilting movements if possible.
5. Pull the bulb out of the fixture.
6. Insert the new bulb and install the cover in the reverse order.

Parking lights/fog lights/daytime running lights

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 232.

Bulbs:
- Parking lights for halogen headlights: W5W
- Parking lights for LED headlights: W5W NBV.
- Daytime running light: PSX24W.
- Fog light: H8.

Replacing the bulbs

1. Turn the steering wheel.
2. Turn the lid counterclockwise, arrow 2, and remove.
3. Pull off the connector.
4. Remove the bulb holder.
   - Parking lights: turn the bulb holder, arrow 1, counterclockwise and remove.
   - Daytime running lights: squeeze the upper and lower locks of the bulb holder, arrow 2, and remove the bulb holder.
   For better accessibility, remove the bulb of the fog light as needed.

5. Pull the bulb out of the fixture.
6. Insert the new bulb and install the cover in the reverse order.
Fog lights: turn the bulb holder, arrow 3, counterclockwise and remove.

5. Pull the bulb out of the fixture.
6. Insert the new bulb and install the cover in the reverse order.
   The daytime running lights bulb holder engages audibly, first below, then above.

LED front lights, bulb replacement

General information
The following lights feature LED technology:
▷ Daytime running lights
▷ High beams
▷ Low beams
▷ Parking lights
▷ Fog lights
In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Overview

Position of the headlights

1 Daytime running lights
2 Low beams/high beams
3 Turn signal

LED bug light

1 Parking lights
2 Fog lights

Turn signal
Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 232.
Bulbs: PW24W
With white turn signal lights: PWY24W

1. Turn the steering wheel.
2. Turn the lid counterclockwise, arrow 1, and remove.
3. Unscrew the inner cover counterclockwise, and remove it.
4. Pull bulb holder out of the bulb housing; if needed, loosen it with small tilting movements if possible.
5. Pull the bulb out of the fixture.
6. Insert the new bulb and install the cover in the reverse order.

Tail lights, bulb replacement

Overview

Vehicles with a rear fog light

Vehicle with two rear fog lights
**Side tail lights**

1. Brake lights/tail lights
2. Turn signal
3. Reversing lights

**Side LED tail lights**

1. Tail lights
2. Turn signal
3. Brake light
4. Reversing lights

**Side tail lights**

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 232.

**Bulbs: P21W**

1. Opening tailgate.
2. Remove left or right cover.

3. Through the opening, loosen the plug connector, arrow 2 on the bulb holder. Press the latches together, arrows 1, and remove the bulb holder.

4. Remove the bulb holder from the opening.
5. Press the nonworking bulb gently into the socket, turn counterclockwise and remove.
   - Arrow 1: brake lights/tail lights.
   - Arrow 2: turn signal.
6. Proceed in the reverse order to insert the new bulb and attach the bulb holder. Make sure that the bulb holder engages in all fasteners.

Central brake light and license plate lights
Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 232.
The lights feature LED technology. In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Vehicles with a rear fog light
Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 232.
Bulbs: W16W

1. On vehicles with heat shield:
   Loosen 3 screws, arrow.

2. Push the heat shield forward and the bumper back in order to be able to reach the fog light.

3. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove.
The wire is long enough to guide the socket down and through between any heat shield that may be installed and the bumper.

4. Replace nonworking bulb.

5. To install the new bulb, proceed in reverse order of removal.

Vehicle with two rear fog lights
Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 232.
Bulbs: W16W
Left rear fog light:

1. On vehicles with heat shield:
   Loosen 3 screws, arrow.

2. Push the heat shield forward and the bumper back in order to be able to reach the fog light.

3. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove.
The wire is long enough to guide the socket down and through between any heat shield that may be installed and the bumper.

4. Replace nonworking bulb.
5. To install the new bulb, proceed in reverse order of removal.

Right fog light:

1. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove.
   The wire is long enough to guide the socket down and through between any heat shield that may be installed and the bumper.

2. Replace nonworking bulb.
3. To install the new bulb, proceed in reverse order of removal.

**Side turn signal, bulb replacement**

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 232.

Bulbs:

▷ With orange lens: W5W.

▷ With white lens: WY5W.

1. Open the hood. The covers of the side turn signal lights are on the left and right next to the hinges of the hood.
2. Loosen nuts of the cover by hand and remove the cover.
3. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove.
4. Replace the bulb.
5. To insert the new bulb, proceed in reverse order of removal. Insert the nuts of the cover and press down.
VEHICLE BATTERY

Maintenance
The battery is maintenance-free.
The added amount of acid is sufficient for the service life of the battery.
More information about the battery can be requested from a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Replacing the vehicle battery

General information
The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you have a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop register the vehicle battery to the vehicle after the battery has been replaced. Once the battery has been registered again, all comfort features will be available without restriction and any Check Control messages displayed which relate to comfort features will disappear.

Safety information

NOTE
Vehicle batteries that are not compatible can damage vehicle systems and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of personal and property damage. Only vehicle batteries that are compatible with your vehicle type should be installed in your vehicle. Information on compatible vehicle batteries is available at your dealer’s service center.

Charging the battery

General information
Make sure that the battery is always sufficiently charged to guarantee that the battery remains usable for its full service life.

A discharged battery is indicated by a red indicator light.

The battery may need to be charged in the following cases:
▷ When making frequent short-distance drives.
▷ If the vehicle is not used for more than a month.
▷ Steptronic transmission: when parked for long periods of time in selector lever position D, R or N.

Starting aid terminals
In the vehicle, only charge the battery via the starting aid terminals, refer to page 243, in the engine compartment with the engine off.

Power failure
After a power loss, some equipment needs to be newly initialized or individual settings updated, for example:
▷ Time: update.
▷ Date: update.

Disposing of old batteries
Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.
Maintain the battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Secure the battery so that it does not tip over during transport.
FUSES

Safety information

WARNING

Incorrect and repaired fuses can overload electrical lines and components. There is a risk of fire. Never attempt to repair a blown fuse. Do not replace a nonworking fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating.

Accessing the fuses

The fuses are located in the glove compartment.

1. Open the glove compartment.
2. Swing the cover down, arrow.

Plastic tweezers and information on the fuse types and locations are stored in the fuse box.

Replacing fuses

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop replace the fuses.
BREAKDOWN ASSISTANCE

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS

The button is located above the Control Display.

The red light in the button flashes when the hazard warning flashers are activated.

ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

Roadside Assistance

The Roadside Assistance phone number can be viewed on the Central Information Display (CID) or a connection to Roadside Assistance can be established directly.

WARNING TRIANGLE

The warning triangle is located in the cargo area.

FIRST-AID KIT

General information

Some of the articles have a limited service life. Check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any expired items promptly.

Storage

The first-aid kit is located in the cargo area.

JUMP-STARTING

General information

If the battery is discharged, the engine can be started using the battery of another vehicle and two jumper cables. Only use jumper cables with fully insulated clamp handles.
Safety information

⚠️ DANGER
Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

⚠️ WARNING
If the jumper cables are connected in the incorrect order, sparking may occur. There is a risk of injury. Pay attention to the correct order during connection.

⚠️ NOTE
In the case of body contact between the two vehicles, a short circuit can occur during jump-starting. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that no body contact occurs.

Preparation

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts. The voltage information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electronic systems/power consumers in both vehicles.

Starting aid terminals

The starting aid terminal in the engine compartment acts as the battery’s positive terminal. Open the cover of the starting aid terminal.

Connecting the cables

To prevent personal injury or damage to both vehicles, adhere strictly to the following procedure.

1. Pull off the lid of the starting aid terminal.
2. Attach one terminal clamp of the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the terminal clamp on the other end of the cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one terminal clamp of the negative jumper cable to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of assisting vehicle.
5. Attach the second terminal clamp to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting the engine

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.

1. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for several minutes at an increased idle speed.
2. Start the engine of the vehicle that is to be started in the usual way.
If the first starting attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before making another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.

3. Let both engines run for several minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables in the reverse order.

Check the battery and recharge, if needed.

TOW-STARTING AND TOWING

Safety information

**WARNING**

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

Steptronic transmission with driven front axle: transporting the vehicle

General information

The vehicle must not be towed if the front wheels are touching the ground.

Safety information

**NOTE**

The vehicle can be damaged when towing the vehicle with a lifted rear axle. There is a risk of damage to property. Have vehicle transported only with lifted front axle or on a loading platform.

Pushing the vehicle

To remove a broken-down vehicle from the danger area, it can be pushed for a short distance.

Roll or push, refer to page 88, the vehicle.

Tow truck

Your vehicle should be transported with a tow truck with a so-called lift bar or on a flat bed.

**NOTE**

The vehicle can become damaged when lifting and securing it.

There is a risk of damage to property.

- Lift the vehicle using suitable means.
- Do not lift or secure the vehicle by its tow fitting, body parts, or suspension parts.

Manual transmission

Towing or pushing the vehicle

A broken-down vehicle can be towed or pushed.

Roll or push, refer to page 85, the vehicle.

**NOTE**

If manual unlocking of the parking brake is not possible, the vehicle cannot be moved or towed. There is a risk of damage to property. The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.

Follow the following instructions:

- Make sure that the ignition is switched on; otherwise, the low beams, tail lights, turn signals, and wipers may be unavailable.
- Do not tow the vehicle with the rear axle tilted, as the front wheels could turn.
- When the engine is stopped, there is no power assist. Consequently, more force
needs to be applied when braking and steering.
▷ Larger steering wheel movements are required.
▷ The towing vehicle must not be lighter than the vehicle being towed; otherwise, it will not be possible to control the vehicle's response.
▷ Do not exceed a towing speed of 30 mph/50 km/h.
▷ Do not exceed a towing distance of 30 miles/50 km.

**Tow truck**

*With driven front axle*

Have your vehicle transported with a tow truck with a so-called lift bar or on a flat bed.

**NOTE**

The vehicle can become damaged when lifting and securing it. There is a risk of damage to property.
▷ Lift the vehicle using suitable means.
▷ Do not lift or secure the vehicle by its tow fitting, body parts, or suspension parts.

If the electrical system has failed, clearly identify the vehicle being towed by placing a sign or a warning triangle in the rear window.

**Safety information**

**WARNING**

If the approved gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is lighter than the vehicle to be towed, the tow fitting can tear off or it will not be possible to control the vehicle's response. There is a risk of an accident! Make sure that the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is heavier than the vehicle to be towed.

**NOTE**

If the tow bar or tow rope is attached incorrectly, damage to other vehicle parts can occur. There is a risk of damage to property. Correctly attach the tow bar or tow rope to the tow fitting.

**Tow bar**

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles. Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an offset angle, please follow the following:
▷ Maneuvering capability is limited going around corners.
▷ The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is secured with an offset.

**Tow rope**

When starting to tow the vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

Use nylon ropes or straps, which will enable the vehicle to be towed without jerking.

**Towing other vehicles**

**General information**

Switch on the hazard warning system, depending on local regulations.
Tow fitting

General information

The screw-in tow fitting should always be carried in the vehicle.

The tow fitting can be screwed in at the front or rear of the vehicle.

The tow fitting and the onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 231, are together in the cargo area.

Use of the tow fitting:

▷ Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle and screw it all the way in.
▷ Use the tow fitting for towing on paved roads only.
▷ Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, for instance do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting.

Safety information

⚠️ NOTE

If the tow fitting is not used as intended, there may be damage to the vehicle or to the tow fitting. There is a risk of damage to property. Follow the notes on using the tow fitting.

Screw thread for tow fitting

Threaded holes for the tow fitting are located in the front and rear of the vehicle on the right side with respect to the direction of travel.

Press on the mark on the edge of the cover to push it out.

Tow-starting

Steptronic transmission

Do not tow-start the vehicle.

Tow-starting the engine is not possible due to the Steptronic transmission.

Have the reasons for the starting difficulties corrected by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Manual transmission

If possible, do not tow-start the vehicle but start the engine by jump-starting, refer to page 242. If the vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter, only tow-start while the engine is cold.

1. Switch on the hazard warning system and comply with local regulations.
2. Switch on the ignition, refer to page 72.
3. Engage third gear.
4. Have the vehicle tow-started with the clutch pedal pressed and slowly release the pedal. After the engine starts, immediately press on the clutch pedal again.
5. Stop at a suitable location, remove the tow bar or rope, and switch off the hazard warning system.

6. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

WASHING THE VEHICLE

General information

Regularly remove foreign objects such as leaves in the area below the windshield when the hood is raised.

Wash your vehicle frequently, particularly in winter. Intense soiling and road salt can damage the vehicle.

Steam jets or high-pressure washers

Safety information

NOTE When cleaning with high-pressure washers, components can be damaged due to the pressure or temperatures being too high. There is a risk of damage to property. Maintain sufficient distance and do not spray too long continuously. Follow the operating instructions for the high-pressure washer.◀

Distances and temperature

▷ Maximum temperature: 140 °F/60 °C.
▷ Minimum distance from sensors, cameras, seals: 12 inches/30 cm.

Automatic vehicle washes

Safety information

NOTE Water can penetrate in the windshield area due to high-pressure washers. There is a risk of damage to property. Avoid high-pressure washers.◀

NOTE Improper use of automatic vehicle washes can cause damage to the vehicle. There is a risk of damage to property. Follow the following instructions:

▷ Give preference to cloth vehicle washes or those that use soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.
▷ Avoid vehicle washes with guide rails higher than 4 in/10 cm to avoid damage to the chassis.
▷ Observe the tire width of the guide rail to avoid damage to tires and rims.
▷ Fold in exterior mirrors to avoid damage to the exterior mirrors.
▷ Unscrew the rod antenna to avoid the rod antenna breaking off.
▷ Deactivate the wiper and, if necessary, rain sensor to avoid damage to the wiper system.
▷ Do not treat the convertible top with wax. Ensure that a cycle without wax or a special cycle for convertibles is available to avoid damage to the convertible top.◀

Driving into a vehicle wash with a manual transmission

In vehicle washes, the vehicle must be able to roll freely.

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 85.
Driving into a vehicle wash with a Steptronic transmission

In vehicle washes, the vehicle must be able to roll freely.

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 88.

Some vehicle washes do not permit persons in the vehicle. The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside when in selector lever position N. A signal is sounded when an attempt is made to lock the vehicle.

Driving out of a vehicle wash

Ensure that the vehicle key is in the car.

Start the engine, refer to page 73.

Headlights

Do not rub wet headlights dry and do not use abrasive or acidic cleaning agents.

Soak areas that have been dirtied, for instance from insects, with shampoo and wash off with water.

Thaw ice with de-icing spray; do not use an ice scraper.

After washing the vehicle

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them; otherwise, braking action can be reduced. The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Completely remove all residues on the windows, to minimize loss of visibility due to smearing and to reduce wiper noises and wiper blade wear.

VEHICLE CARE

Vehicle care products

General information

MINI recommends using vehicle care and cleaning products from MINI. Suitable care products are available from a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

WARNING

Cleansers can contain substances that are dangerous and harmful to your health. There is a risk of injury. When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows. Only use products intended for cleaning vehicles. Follow the instructions on the container.

Vehicle paint

General information

Regular care contributes to driving safety and value retention. Environmental influences in areas with elevated air pollution or natural contaminants, such as tree resin or pollen can affect the vehicle’s paintwork. Tailor the frequency and extent of your vehicle care to these influences.

Aggressive substances such as spilled fuel, oil, grease or bird droppings, must be removed immediately to prevent the finish from being altered or discolored.

Matte finish

Only use cleaning and care products suitable for vehicles with matte finish.

Caring for the convertible top

General information

The appearance and life of the convertible top depend on correct care and operation.

Follow the following instructions:

▷ Clean roofliner with a microfiber cloth. Dampen cloth lightly with water.
▷ Do not soak the roofliner.
▷ To avoid water stains, spots of mold, and chafe marks, do not keep the convertible top wet for extended periods.
top enclosed in its case for a long period of time. Do not fold up the convertible top or stow it in its case when it is wet or icy.
▷ Remove any water stains that have appeared on the roofliner using a microfiber cloth and an interior cleaner.
▷ When the vehicle is parked in enclosed areas for lengthy periods, ensure that the area is well ventilated.
▷ Park the vehicle in the shade to protect it from intensive solar radiation so that color, rubber, and fabric are not affected.
▷ Remove bird droppings immediately as their corrosive effect will otherwise attack the convertible top and damage the rubber seals.
▷ Hard to remove tree sap or bird droppings can be removed from the convertible top with special tree sap remover and a soft brush.

Safety information

NOTE
Spot remover, paint thinner, solvents, gasoline or similar can damage the convertible top or the rubber coating. There is a risk of damage to property. To remove spots on the convertible top, use only suitable cleaning agents, for instance special convertible top cleaning agent.

Cleaning the convertible top
To remove heavy soiling, especially for light colored convertible tops, use a special convertible top cleaner.
Proceed as follows when cleaning:
1. Spray the convertible top with the convertible top cleaner. Follow the manufacturer’s instructions.
2. Make the convertible top cleaner foam up using a well saturated sponge, moving it in circular motions.
3. Finish washing the vehicle in the vehicle wash or rinse with ample amounts of water. Follow notes regarding automatic washing systems or vehicle washes.
Treat the convertible top with an impregnating agent after it has been washed three to five times.
Suitable cleaning agents and care products are available from a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Leather care
Remove dust from the leather regularly, using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.
Otherwise, particles of dust and road grime chafe in pores and folds, and lead to increased wear and premature degradation of the leather surface.
To guard against discoloration, such as from clothing, clean leather and provide leather care roughly every two months.
Clean light-colored leather more frequently because soiling on such surfaces is substantially more visible.
Use leather care products; otherwise, dirt and grease will gradually break down the protective layer of the leather surface.

Upholstery material care

General information
Vacuum the upholstery regularly with a vacuum cleaner.
If upholstery is very dirty, for instance with beverage stains, use a soft sponge or microfiber cloth with a suitable interior cleaner.
Clean the upholstery down to the seams using large sweeping motions. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.
Safety information

NOTE
Open Velcro® fasteners on articles of clothing can damage the seat covers. There is a risk of damage to property. Ensure that any Velcro® fasteners are closed. ◄

Caring for special components

Light-alloy wheels
When cleaning the vehicle, use only neutral wheel cleaners having a pH value from 5 to 9. Do not use abrasive cleaning agents or steam jets above 140 °F/60 °C. Follow the manufacturer's instructions.
Aggressive, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents can destroy the protective layer of adjacent components, such as the brake disc.
After cleaning, apply the brakes briefly to dry them. The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Chrome surfaces
Carefully clean components such as the radiator grille or door handles with an ample supply of water, possibly with shampoo added, particularly when they have been exposed to road salt.

Rubber components
Environmental influences can cause surface soiling of rubber parts and a loss of gloss. Use only water and suitable cleaning agents for cleaning.
Treat especially worn rubber parts with rubber care agents at regular intervals. When cleaning rubber seals, do not use any silicon-containing vehicle care products in order to avoid damage or noises.

Fine wood parts
Clean fine wood facing and fine wood components only with a moist rag. Then dry with a soft cloth.

Plastic components

NOTE
Cleansers that contain alcohol or solvents, such as lacquer thinners, heavy-duty grease removers, fuel, or such, can damage plastic parts. There is a risk of damage to property. Clean with a microfiber cloth. Dampen cloth lightly with water. ◄
Plastic components are e.g.:
▷ Imitation leather surfaces.
▷ Light lenses.
▷ Instrument cluster cover.
▷ Matt black spray-coated components.
▷ Painted parts in the car’s interior.
Clean with a microfiber cloth.
Dampen cloth lightly with water.

Safety belts

WARNING
Chemical cleansers can destroy the safety belt webbing. Missing protective effect of the safety belts. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Use only a mild soapy solution for cleaning the safety belts. ◄
Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus have a negative impact on safety.
Use only a mild soapy solution, with the safety belts clipped into their buckles.
Safety belts should only be allowed to retract if they are dry.
Carpets and floor mats

**WARNING**
Objects in the driver’s floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of an accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver’s floor area. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.

Floor mats can be removed from the car’s interior for cleaning. If the floor carpets are very dirty, clean with a microfiber cloth and water or a textile cleaner. To prevent matting of the carpet, rub back and forth in the direction of travel only.

**Trailer hitch with removable ball**
Keep the ball head and receptacle clean. Regularly grease or oil bearings, sliding surfaces and the small balls on the holding pin with resin-free greases or oils. Before using steam cleaners or high pressure cleaners on the vehicle, remove the ball head and attach the cover to the receptacle. Do not clean the ball head with a steam cleaner or high pressure cleaner.

**Sensor/camera lenses**
To clean sensors and camera lenses, use a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass detergent.

**Displays/Screens/Projection lenses**

**NOTE**
Chemical cleansers, moisture or fluids of any kind can damage the surface of displays and screens. There is a risk of damage to property. Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth.

**NOTE**
The surface of displays can be damaged with improper cleaning. There is a risk of damage to property. Avoid pressure that is too high and do not use any scratching materials.

Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth. For stubborn soiling on the projection lens of the Head-up Display, dampen the microfiber cloth with alcohol. Projection lens, refer to page 108.

**Long-term vehicle storage**
When the vehicle is shut down for longer than three months, special measures must be taken. Further information is available from a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
FIND ME.
TECHNICAL DATA

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

GENERAL INFORMATION

The technical data and specifications in this Owner's Manual are used as guidance values. The vehicle-specific data can deviate from this, for instance due to the selected special equipment, country version or country-specific measurement method. Detailed values can be found in the approval documents, on labels on the vehicle or can be obtained from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

The information in the vehicle documents always has priority over the information in this Owner's Manual.

DIMENSIONS

The dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment or country-specific measurement method.

The specified heights do not take into account attached parts, for instance a roof antenna, roof racks or spoiler. The heights can deviate, for instance due to the selected special equipment, tires, load and chassis version.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MINI Convertible</th>
<th>inches/mm</th>
<th>ft/m</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Width with mirrors</td>
<td>76.1/1,932</td>
<td>35.5/10.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Width without mirrors</td>
<td>68/1,727</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height</td>
<td>55.7/1,415</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Length</td>
<td>151.1-152.5/3,837-3,874</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheelbase</td>
<td>98.2/2,495</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smallest turning radius diam.</td>
<td>35.5/10.8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## WEIGHTS

### MINI Cooper Convertible

| Approved gross vehicle weight | lbs/kg | 3,691/1,674 |
| Manual transmission | lbs/kg | 3,739/1,696 |
| Steptronic transmission | lbs/kg | 3,739/1,696 |
| Load | lbs/kg | 710/322 |

| Approved front axle load | lbs/kg | 2,011/912 |
| Manual transmission | lbs/kg | 2,070/939 |
| Steptronic transmission | lbs/kg | 2,070/939 |
| Approved rear axle load | lbs/kg | 1,770/803 |

### MINI Cooper S Convertible

| Approved gross vehicle weight | lbs/kg | 3,849/1,746 |
| Manual transmission | lbs/kg | 3,889/1,764 |
| Steptronic transmission | lbs/kg | 3,889/1,764 |
| Load | lbs/kg | 780/354 |

| Approved front axle load | lbs/kg | 2,110/957 |
| Manual transmission | lbs/kg | 2,150/975 |
| Steptronic transmission | lbs/kg | 2,150/975 |
| Approved rear axle load | lbs/kg | 1,790/812 |

### MINI John Cooper Works Convertible

| Approved gross vehicle weight | lbs/kg | 3,900/1,769 |
| Manual transmission | lbs/kg | 3,940/1,787 |
| Steptronic transmission | lbs/kg | 3,940/1,787 |
| Load | lbs/kg | 800/363 |

<p>| Approved front axle load | lbs/kg | 2,121/962 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MINI John Cooper Works Convertible</th>
<th>lbs/kg</th>
<th>2,169/984</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Steptronic transmission</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approved rear axle load</td>
<td></td>
<td>1,821/826</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CAPACITIES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MINI Convertible</th>
<th>US gal/liters</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fuel tank, approx.</td>
<td>11.6/44.0</td>
<td>Fuel quality, refer to page 200.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX

Any updates to the Owner's Manual of the vehicle are listed here.

UPDATES AFTER THE EDITORIAL DEADLINE

These chapters of the printed Owner's Manual contain updates made after the editorial deadline:

▷ Information: vehicle identification number, refer to page 12.
INDEX

A

ABS, Anti-lock Brake System 137
Acceleration Assistant, see Launch Control 91
Accessories and parts 8
ACC, see Camera-based cruise control 142
Activated-charcoal filter 166
Activation times, parked-car ventilation 167
Active Cruise Control, see Camera-based cruise control 142
Adaptive brake lights, see Brake force display 135
Additives, oil 225
Adjustments, steering wheel 67
After washing vehicle 249
Airbags 117
Airbags, indicator and warning light 118
Air circulation, see Recirculated-air mode 161, 165
Air conditioner 160
Air conditioning 161, 164
Air, dehumidifying, see Air conditioning 161, 164
Air distribution, manual 162, 165
Air flow, air conditioner 161
Air flow, automatic climate control 165
Air pressure, tires 202
Air vents, see Ventilation 166
Alarm system 49
Alarm triggering 49
Alarm, unintentional 50
Alertness assistant 135
All around the interior mirror 19
All-season tires, see Winter tires 209
Alternative oil types 225
Always Open Timer, Control Display 110
Always Open Timer, Onboard Computer 104
Antifreeze, washer fluid 83
Antilock Brake System, ABS 137
Anti-slip control, see DSC 137
Anti-theft protection, lug bolts 216
App, MINI Motorer’s Guide 33
Approach control warning with city light braking function 129
Approved axle load 257
Apps, see Owner’s Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Arrival time 104
Ash tray 172
Assistance when driving off 140
AUTO intensity 164
Automatic climate control 163
Automatic Curb Monitor 66
Automatic deactivation, front-seat passenger airbags 119
Automatic headlight control 112
Automatic locking 48
Automatic transmission with Steptronic 85
Automatic vehicle wash 248
AUTO program, automatic climate control 164
AUTO program, intensity 164
Auto Start/Stop function 74
Auto washing 248
AUX-IN port, position in vehicle 173
AUX-IN port, see Owner’s Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Average fuel consumption 103
Average speed 103
Axle loads, weights 257

B

Backrest curvature, see Lumbar support 60
Backrest, seats 59
Band-aids, see First-aid kit 242
Battery replacement, vehicle battery 240
Battery, vehicle 240
Being towed, see Tow-starting and towing 244
Belts, safety belts 61
Beverage holder, cup holder 176
Bonus range, GREEN Mode 191
Bottle holder, see Cup holder 176
Brake assistant 137
Brake discs, break-in 184
Brake force display 135
Brake lights, brake force display 135
Brake pads, break-in 184
Braking, information 186
Breakdown assistance 242
Breakdown assistance, Roadside Assistance 242
Break-in 184
Brightness of Control Display 107
Bug light 233
Bulb replacement 232
Bulb replacement, front 233, 235
Bulb replacement, rear 236
Bulb replacement, side 239
Bulbs and lights 232
Button, Start/Stop 72
Bypassing, see Jump-starting 242

Calendar, see Owner’s Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
California Proposition 65 Warning 8
Camera-based assistance systems, see Intelligent Safety 128
Camera-based cruise control 142
Camera lenses, care 252
Camera, rearview camera 153
Can holder, see Cup holder 176
Care, displays 252
Care, vehicle 249
Care, washing the vehicle 248
Cargo area 178
Cargo area, enlarging 180
Cargo area, loading 179
Cargo area partition 181
Cargo area, storage compartments 180
Cargo, stowing and securing 179
Cargo straps 180
Carpet, care 252
Catalytic converter, see Hot exhaust gas system 185
CBS Condition Based Service 229
CD, see Owner’s Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Center armrest 176
Center console 18
Central Information Display (CID) 20
Central Information Display (CID) operating concept 20
Central instrument cluster, LED ring 107
Central locking system, unlocking, from inside 43
Central screen, see Control Display 20
Changes, technical, see For Your Own Safety 8
Changing parts 231
Changing wheels 215
Changing wheels/tires 208
Chassis number, see Vehicle identification number 12
Check Control 94
Checking the oil level electronically 223
Children, seating position 68
Children, transporting safely 68
Child restraint system 68
Child restraint system LATCH 70
Child restraint systems, mounting 69
Child seat, mounting 69
Child seats 68
Chrome parts, care 251
Cigarette lighter 172
Cleaning, displays 252
Climate control 160, 163
Coasting 193
Coasting with engine decoupled, coasting 193
Coasting with idling engine 193
Combination switch, see Turn signals 77
Combi switch, see Wiper system 78, 81
Comfort Access 43
Comfort entry 39
Compartments in the doors 176
Compass 170
Compressor 211
Computer, see Onboard Computer 102
Condensation on windows 166
Condensation under the vehicle 187
Condition Based Service CBS 229
Configuring driving program 140
Confirmation signal 49
Contacts, see Owner’s Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Continued driving with a flat tire 124, 127
Control Display 20
Control Display, settings 106
Controller 21
Control systems, driving stability 137
Convenient closing with the remote control 39
Convenient opening 39
Convertible, convertible top 52
Convertible mode, automatic climate control 165
Convertible program, automatic climate control 165
Convertible roof 52
Convertible top 52
Convertible top, care 249
Convertible top, cargo area partition 55
Convertible top, emergency operation 55
Convertible top, rollover protection system 120
Coolant 227
Cooling, maximum 164
Cooling system 227
Cornering light 113
Corrosion on brake discs 186
Cosmetic mirror 172
Courtesy lights during unlocking 39
Courtesy lights with the vehicle locked 40
Cruise control 147
Cruise control, active 142
Cruise control with distance control, see Camera-based cruise control 142
Cruise control without distance control, see Cruise control 147
Cruising range 99
Cup holder 176
Current fuel consumption 99

D
Damage, tires 208
Damping control, dynamic 139
Data memory 9
Data, technical 256, 258
Date 106
Date display 99
Daytime running lights 113
DCC, see Cruise control 147
Defrosting, see Defrosting the windows 162
Defrosting, see Windows, defrosting 166
Defrosting the windows 162
Dehumidifying, air 161, 164
Deleting personal data 26
Deletion of personal data 26
Destination distance 104
Digital clock 98
Digital compass 170
Dimensions 256
Dimmable exterior mirrors 66
Dimmable interior mirror 66
Direction indicator, see Turn signals 77
Display, electronic, instrument cluster 94
Display, engine temperature 104
Display, GREEN Mode 190
Display lighting, see Instrument lighting 115
Displays 93
Displays, care 252
Disposal, coolant 228
Disposal, vehicle battery 240
Distance control, see PDC 149
Distance to destination 104
Divided screen view, split screen 25
Drive-off assistant 140
Drive-off assistant, see DSC 137
Driver assistance, see Intelligent Safety 128
Driving Dynamics Control, see MINI Driving Modes switch 139
Driving Excitement, SPORT 105
Driving instructions, break-in 184
Driving mode, GREEN 190
Driving modes 139
Driving notes, general 185
Driving on racetracks 188
Driving stability control systems 137
Driving style analysis 194
Driving tip, GREEN tip 192
Driving tips 185
DSC Dynamic Stability Control 137
DTC Dynamic Traction Control 138
DVD, Video, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Dynamic Damping Control 139
Dynamic Stability Control DSC 137
Dynamic Traction Control DTC 138

E
Easy-Load function, see Loading aid 179
Electronic displays, instrument cluster 94
Electronic oil measurement 223
Electronic Stability Program ESP, see DSC 137
E-mail, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Emergency operation, convertible top 55
Emergency release, fuel filler flap 199
Emergency service, see Roadside Assistance 242
Emergency unlocking, tailgate 46
Emergency unlocking, transmission lock 91
Emergency wheel, compact wheel, see Emergency wheel 219
Energy Control 99
Engine, automatic Start/Stop function 74
Engine, automatic switch-off 74
Engine compartment 221
Engine compartment, working in 221
Engine coolant 227
Engine idling when driving, coasting 193
Engine oil 223
Engine oil, adding 224
Engine oil additives 225
Engine oil change 226
Engine oil filler neck 224
Engine oil types, alternative 225
Engine oil types, suitable 225
Engine start, jump-starting 242
Engine start, see Starting the engine 73
Engine stop 74
Engine temperature, display 104
Entering a destination, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Entering an address, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Entering a vehicle wash 248
Equipment, interior 168
Error displays, see Check Control 94
ESP Electronic Stability Program, see DSC 137
Exchanging wheels/tires 208
Exhaust gas system 185
Exiting a vehicle wash 248
Expanding the cargo area volume 181
Exterior mirror, automatic dimming feature 66
Exterior mirrors 65
Exterior mirrors, Automatic Curb Monitor 66
Exterior mirrors, malfunction 65
External start 242
External temperature display 98
External temperature warning 98
Eyes for securing cargo 180
Failure message, see Check Control 94
False alarm, see Unintentional alarm 50
Fan, see Air flow 161, 165
Fastening safety belts, see Safety belts 61
Filler neck for engine oil 224
Finding charging stations, see Charging stations and points of interest, see Owner’s Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Fine wood, care 251
First-aid kit 242
Flat tire, changing wheels 215
Flat Tire Monitor FTM 126
Flat tire, repairing 210
Flat tire, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 121
Flat tire, warning light 122, 126
Flooding 185
Floor carpet, care 252
Floor mats, care 252
Fogged up windows 162
Fold-away position, windshield wipers 80, 82
Fold back rear seat backrests 180
Foot brake 186
For Your Own Safety 8
Front airbags 117
Front fog lights 114
Front-seat passenger airbags, automatic deactivation 119
Front-seat passenger airbags, indicator light 119
Front seats 59
FTM Flat Tire Monitor 126
Fuel 200
Fuel cap 198
Fuel consumption, see Average fuel consumption 103
Fuel filler flap 198
Fuel gauge 98
Fuel quality 200
Fuel recommendation 200
Fuel, tank capacity 258
Fuse 241
Garage door opener, see Integrated Universal Remote Control 168
Gasoline 200
Gear shift indicator 100
General driving notes 185
Glare shield 172
Glove compartment 175
GPS, navigation, see Owner’s Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
GREEN bonus range 191
GREEN Mode 190
GREEN Mode driving style analysis 194
GREEN - program, driving dynamics 139
GREEN tip, driving tip 192
Gross vehicle weight, approved 257
Ground clearance 187
Halogen headlights 233
Handbrake, see Parking brake 77
Hand-held transmitter, alternating code 169
Hands-free kit, see Owner’s Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Hazard warning flashers 242
Headlight control, automatic 112
Headlight courtesy delay feature 112
Headlight flasher 78
Headlight glass 232
Headlights, care 249
Head restraints, front 63
Head restraints, rear 64
Head-up Display 108
Head-up Display, shift point indicator 110
Head-up Display, sport displays 109
Head-up Display, standard view 108
Heavy cargo, stowing cargo 179
High-beam Assistant 113
High beams 78
High beams/low beams, see High-beam Assistant 113
Hills 186
Hill start assistant, see Drive-off assistant 140
Holder for beverages 176
Homepage 6
Hood 221
Horn 16
Hot exhaust gas system 185
Hotline, see Owner’s Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
HUD Head-up Display 108
Hydroplaning 185
Ice warning, see External temperature warning 98
Icy roads, see External temperature warning 98
Identification marks, tires 206
Identification number, see Vehicle identification number 12
Ignition off 72
Ignition on 72
Illuminated ring, central instrument cluster 107
Indication of a flat tire 122, 126
Indicator light, see Check Control 94
Individual air distribution 162, 165
Individual settings, see Personal Profile 46
Inductive charging, see Wireless charging, see Owner’s Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Inflation pressure, tires 202
Inflation pressure warning, tires 126
Info Display, see Onboard Computer 102
Information 6
Initialize, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 122
Initializing, Flat Tire Monitor FTM 126
Instrument cluster 93
Instrument cluster, electronic displays 94
Instrument lighting 115
Integrated key 42
Integrated Owner’s Manual in the vehicle 31
Intelligent Safety 128
Intended use 8
Intensity, AUTO program 164
Interior equipment 168
Interior lights 115
Interior lights during unlocking 39
Interior lights with the vehicle locked 40
Interior mirror 19, 65
Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature 66
Interior mirror, compass 170
Interior mirror, manually dimmable 66
Interior motion sensor 50
Internet site 6
Interval display, service requirements 99
Interval mode 79, 81
In the vicinity of the center console 18
In the vicinity of the steering wheel 16
Jacking points for the vehicle jack 217
Jam protection system, windows 51
Jump-starting 242
Keyless Go, see Comfort Access 43
Key Memory, see Personal Profile 46
Key, see Integrated key 42
Key, see Remote control 38
Kickdown, Steptronic transmission 88
Knee airbag 117
L
Label on recommended tires 209
Label, runflat tires 210
Language on Control Display 106
Lashing eyes 180
LATCH child restraint fixing system 70
Launch Control 91
Leather, care 250
LED ring, central instrument cluster 107
LEDs, light-emitting diodes 232
Letters and numbers, entering 27
Light 111
Light-alloy wheels, care 251
Light-emitting diodes, LEDs 232
Lighter 172
Lighting 111
Light replacement 232
Light replacement, front 233, 235
Light replacement, rear 236
Light replacement, side 239
Lights and bulbs 232
Light switch 111
Load 179
Loading 178
Loading aid 179
Locking, automatic 48
Locking, from inside 43
Locking, settings 48
Low beams 111
Low beams, automatic, see High-beam Assistant 113
Lower back support, mechanical 60
Lug bolt lock 216
Lumbar support, mechanical 60

M
Maintenance 229
Maintenance requirements 229
Maintenance, service requirements 99
Maintenance system, MINI 229
Make-up mirror 172
Malfunction displays, see Check Control 94
Manual air distribution 162, 165
Manual air flow 161, 165
Manual mode, transmission 89
Manual operation, fuel filler flap 199
Manual operation, PDC Park Distance Control 151
Manual operation, rearview camera 153
Manual transmission 84
Manufacturer of the MINI 8
Map update, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Matte finish 249
Maximum cooling 164
Maximum speed, display 100
Maximum speed, winter tires 209
Measurement, units of 107
Mechanical key 42
Medical kit 242
Menu in instrument cluster 102
Menus, see Central Information Display (CID) operating concept 22
Messages, see Check Control 94
Microfilter 162, 166
MID – program, driving dynamics 139
MINI Connected, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
MINI driving modes 139
MINI logo projection during unlocking 39
MINI maintenance system 229
MINIMALISM Analyser 194
MINIMALISM information 192
MINI Motorer's Guide app 33
Minimum tread, tires 208
Mirrors 65
Mobile communication devices in the vehicle 185
Mobility System 211
Modifications, technical, see For Your Own Safety 8
Moisture in headlight 232
Monitor, see Control Display 20
Motorer's Guide app, see MINI Motorer's Guide app 33
Mounting of child restraint systems 69
MP3 player, see Audio, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Multifunction steering wheel, buttons 16
Multimedia, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Music hard disk, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
N
Navigation, see Owner’s Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Neck restraints, front, see Head restraints 63
Neck restraints, rear, see Head restraints 64
Neutral cleaner, see Wheel cleaner 251
New wheels and tires 208
Notes, see Owner’s Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

O
OBD Onboard Diagnostics 230
Obstacle marking, rearview camera 154
Octane rating, see Recommended fuel grade 201
Odometer 98
Office, see Owner’s Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Oil 223
Oil, adding 224
Oil additives 225
Oil change 226
Oil change interval, service requirements 99
Oil filler neck 224
Oil types, alternative 225
Oil types, suitable 225
Old batteries, disposal 240
Onboard Computer 102
Onboard Diagnostics OBD 230
Onboard literature, printed 31
Onboard vehicle tool kit 231

On-call service, see Roadside Assistance 242
Online Owner’s Manual 33
Opening and closing 38
Opening, from inside 43
Operating menus, Central Information Display (CID) 20
Optional equipment 7
Owner’s Manual media 31
Owner’s Manual, printed 31

Printed onboard literature 31
Profile, see Personal Profile 46
Programmable memory buttons, Central Information Display (CID) 26
Protective function, windows 51
Push-and-turn reel, see Controller 21

P
Paint, vehicle 249
Panic alarm, see Panic mode 49
Panic mode 49
Parallel parking assistant 155
Park Distance Control PDC 149
Parked-car ventilation 166
Parked vehicle, condensation 187
Parking aid, see PDC 149
Parking assistant 155
Parking brake 77
Parking lights 111
Parts and accessories 8
Passenger’s side mirror, tilting 66
Pathway lines, rearview camera 154
PDC Park Distance Control 149
Performance Control 139
Personal Profile 46
Person warning with City light braking function 132
Plastic, care 251
PostCrash — iBrake 136
Power failure 240
Power windows 51
Prescribed engine oil types 225
Pressure, tires 202
Pressure warning, tires 126

Racetrack operation 188
Radiator fluid 227
Radio-operated remote control, opening/closing 38
Radio-ready state 73
Radio, see Owner’s Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Rain sensor 79, 81
Ratchet straps 180
Rear fog light 114
Rear lights 236
Rear luggage rack 187
Rearview camera 152
Rear window defroster 162, 166
Recirculated-air filter 166
Recirculated-air mode 161, 165
Recommended fuel grade 201
Recommended tire brands 209
Refueling 198
Remaining range 99
Remote control, additional 41
Remote control, loss 41
Remote control, malfunction 41
Remote control, opening/closing 38
Remote control, replacing the battery 40
Remote control, universal 168
Replacing parts 231
Replacing the battery, remote control 40
Replacing wheels/tires 208
Reporting safety malfunctions 13
RES CNCL button, see Camera-based cruise control 142
RES CNCL button, see Cruise control 147
Reserve warning, see Range 99
Reset, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 122
Retreaded tires 209
Roadside Assistance 242
Roadside parking lights 112
Rolling code hand-held transmitter 169
Rollover protection system 120
RON recommended fuel grade 201
Roof load capacity 257
Roof, see Convertible top 52
Route, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
RSC Runflat System Component, see Runflat tires 210
Rubber components, care 251
Runflat tires 210

S
Safe braking 186
Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat 63
Safety belts 61
Safety belts, care 251
Safety belts, rear 63
Safety systems, airbags 117
Saving fuel 189
Screen, see Control Display 20
Screwdriver 231
Sealant 211
Seat heating, front 61
Seating position for children 68
Seats, front 59
Securing cargo 179
Selection list in instrument cluster 102
Sensors, care 252
Service and warranty 9
Service requirements, Condition Based Service CBS 229
Service requirements, display 99
Servotronic 141
SET button, see Camera-based cruise control 142
SET button, see Cruise control 147
Settings, locking/unlocking 48
Settings, mirrors 65
Settings on Control Display 106
Shift gate rotary switch 139
Shift paddles on the steering wheel 90
Shift point indicator, Head-up Display 110
Side airbag 117
Signaling, horn 16
Signals when unlocking 49
Sitting safely 59
Size 256
SMS, see Short messages, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
SMS text messages, supplementary 97
Snow chains 214
Socket 173
Socket, OBD Onboard Diagnostics 230
Sound output, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Spare tire, see Emergency wheel 219
Speed, average 103
Speed Limit Info 100
Speed Limit Info, Onboard Computer 104
Speed limits, display 100
Speed warning 105
Split screen 25
Sport displays 105
Sport displays, Head-up Display 109
SPORT program, driving dynamics 140
Sport program, transmission 88
Stability control systems 137
Standard equipment 7
Standard view, Head-up Display 108
Start/stop, automatic function 74
Start/Stop button 72
Starting the engine 73
Stations, AM/FM, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Status control display, tires 122
Status information, Central Information Display (CID) 25
Status of Owner's Manual 7
Steering assistance 141
Steering wheel, adjusting 67
Steptronic Sport transmission, see Steptronic transmission 85

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983394 - X/17

267
Steptronic Sport transmission with double clutch, see Steptronic transmission 85
Steptronic transmission 85
Steptronic transmission with double clutch, see Steptronic transmission 85
Stopping the engine 74
Storage compartments 175
Storage, tires 210
Storing the vehicle 252
Stowing and securing cargo 179
Summer tires, tread 207
Sun visor 172
Supplementary Owner's Manuals 31
Supplementary SMS text messages 97
Switch for driving dynamics 139
Switch, see Cockpit 16
Symbols 7
Symbols in the status field 25

T

Tachometer 98
Tailgate 45
Tailgate, emergency unlocking 46
Tailgate via remote control 40
Tail lights 236
Technical changes, see For Your Own Safety 8
Technical data 256, 258
Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Teleservices, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Temperature, air conditioner 161
Temperature, automatic climate control 163
Temperature display for external temperature 98
Temperature, engine 104
Terminal, starting aid 243
Theft alarm system, see Alarm system 49
Thigh support 60
Tilt alarm sensor 50
Tilting, passenger's side mirror 66
Time 106
Time of arrival 104
Tire damage 208
Tire identification marks 206
Tire inflation pressure 202
Tire inflation pressure monitor, see FTM 126
Tire pressure 202
Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 121
Tire repair kit, see Mobility System 211
Tires, changing 208
Tire sealant, see Mobility System 211
Tires, everything on wheels and tires 202
Tires, runflat 210
Tire tread 207
Tone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Tools 231
Total vehicle weight 257
Touchpad 23
Towing 244
Tow-starting 244
TPM Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 121
Traction control 138
TRACTION driving mode, driving dynamics 138
Traffic bulletins, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Entertainment, Communication 6
Trailer hitch, care 252
Transmission lock, electronic unlocking 91
Transmission lock, releasing manually 90
Transmission, manual transmission 84
Transmission, see Steptronic transmission 85
Transporting children safely 68
Tread, tires 207
Trip computer 104
Triple turn signal activation 77
Trip odometer 98
Trip recorder, see Trip odometer 98
Trunk, cargo area partition 181
Trunk, emergency unlocking 46
Turning radius lines, rearview camera 154
Turn signal, front 233, 235
Turn signal, side 239
Turn signals, operation 77
Turn signals, rear, bulb replacement 236

U

Unintentional alarm 50
Units of measurement 107
Universal remote control 168
Unlocking, settings 48
Updates made after the editorial deadline 7
Upholstery care 250
USB interface, position in vehicle 173
USB port, see USB interface 173
Use, intended 8
V
Vanity mirror 172
Vehicle battery 240
Vehicle battery, replacing 240
Vehicle, break-in 184
Vehicle care 249
Vehicle care products 249
Vehicle features and options 7
Vehicle identification number 12
Vehicle jack 217
Vehicle paint 249
Vehicle storage 252
Vehicle wash 248
Vehicle, washing 248
Ventilation 166
Ventilation, see Parked-car ventilation 166
VIN, see Vehicle identification number 12
Voice activation system 28
Voice command response, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Welcome lights during unlocking 39
Wheel cleaner 251
Wheels, changing 208
Wheels, everything on wheels and tires 202
Wheels, Flat Tire Monitor FTM 126
Wheels, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 121
Wind deflector 57
Window defroster, rear 162, 166
Windows, powered 51
Windshield cleaning system 78, 81
Windshield defroster 162, 166
Windshield washer fluid 83
Windshield washer nozzles 80, 82
Windshield wipers, fold-away position 80, 82
Windshield wipers, see Wiper system 78, 81
Winter storage, care 252
Winter tires, suitable tires 209
Winter tires, tread 207
Wiper blades, replacing 231
Wiper fluid 83
Wiper system 78, 81
Wireless charging dock, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Wireless charging, see Wireless charging, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Wood, care 251
Word match concept, navigation 27
Wrench 231

W
Warning and indicator lights, see Check Control 94
Warning displays, see Check Control 94
Warning messages, see Check Control 94
Warning triangle 242
Warranty 8
Washer fluid 83
Washer nozzles, windshield 80, 82
Washing the vehicle 248
Water on roads 185
Weights 257
Welcome lights 112